

# A Personal Journey to Writing

Nguyễn Quân Bá Hồng

May 8, 2022

# Contents

0.1	Dictionary . . . . .	3
<b>I</b>	<b>Literary Writings</b>	<b>4</b>
0.2	Linguistics . . . . .	5
<b>1</b>	<b>William Strunk Jr., The Elements of Style</b>	<b>6</b>
1.1	Elementary Rules of Usage . . . . .	14
1.1.1	Form the possessive singular of nouns by adding 's . . . . .	14
1.1.2	In a series of $\geq 3$ terms with a single conjunction, use a comma after each term except the last . . . . .	14
1.1.3	Enclose parenthetical expressions between commas . . . . .	15
1.1.4	Place a comma before a conjunction introducing an independent clause . . . . .	16
1.1.5	Do not join independent clauses with a comma . . . . .	16
1.1.6	Do not break sentences in 2 . . . . .	17
1.1.7	Use a colon after an independent clause to introduce a list of particulars, an appositive, an amplification, or an illustrative quotation . . . . .	17
1.1.8	Use a dash to set off an abrupt break or interruption & to announce a long appositive or summary . . . . .	17
1.1.9	The number of the subject determines the number of the verb . . . . .	18
1.1.10	Use the proper case of pronoun . . . . .	19
1.1.11	A participial phrase at the beginning of a sentence must refer to the grammatical subject . . . . .	20
1.2	Elementary Principles of Composition . . . . .	20
1.2.1	Choose a suitable design & hold to it . . . . .	20
1.2.2	Make the paragraph the unit of composition: 1 paragraph to each topic . . . . .	20
1.2.3	Use the active voice . . . . .	21
1.2.4	Put statements in positive form . . . . .	22
1.2.5	Use definite, specific, concrete language . . . . .	22
1.2.6	Omit needless words . . . . .	23
1.2.7	Avoid a succession of loose sentences . . . . .	24
1.2.8	Express coordinate ideas in similar form . . . . .	24
1.2.9	Keep related words together . . . . .	25
1.2.10	In summaries, keep to 1 tense . . . . .	26
1.2.11	Place the emphatic words of a sentence at the end . . . . .	27
1.3	A Few Matters of Form . . . . .	27
1.4	Words & Expressions Commonly Misused . . . . .	29
1.5	An Approach to Style (With a List of Reminders) . . . . .	33
1.5.1	Place yourself in the background . . . . .	35
1.5.2	Write in a way that comes naturally . . . . .	35
1.5.3	Work from a suitable design . . . . .	35
1.5.4	Write with nouns & verbs . . . . .	36
1.5.5	Revise & rewrite . . . . .	36
1.5.6	Do not overwrite . . . . .	36
1.5.7	Do not overstate . . . . .	36
1.5.8	Avoid the use of qualifiers . . . . .	36
1.5.9	Do not affect a breezy manner . . . . .	37
1.5.10	Use orthodox spelling . . . . .	37
1.5.11	Do not explain too much . . . . .	38
1.5.12	Do not construct awkward adverbs . . . . .	38
1.5.13	Make sure the reader knows who is speaking . . . . .	38
1.5.14	Avoid fancy words . . . . .	39

1.5.15	Do not use dialect unless your ear is good	40
1.5.16	Be clear	40
1.5.17	Do not inject opinion	40
1.5.18	Use figures of speech sparingly	41
1.5.19	Do not take shortcuts at the cost of clarity	41
1.5.20	Avoid foreign languages	41
1.5.21	Prefer the standard to the offbeat	41
1.5.22	Afterword	44
<b>2</b>	<b>William Zinsser. <i>On Writing Well: The Classic Guide to Writing Nonfiction</i></b>	<b>45</b>
2.1	The Transaction	51
2.2	Simplicity	55
2.3	Clutter	62
2.4	Style	62
2.5	The Audience	62
2.6	Words	62
2.7	Usage	62
2.8	Unity	62
2.9	The Lead & the Ending	62
2.10	Bits & Pieces	62
2.11	Nonfiction as Literature	63
2.12	Writing About People: The Interview	63
2.13	writing About Places: The Travel Article	63
2.14	Writing About Yourself: The Memoir	63
2.15	Science & Technology	63
2.16	Business Writing: Writing in Your Job	63
2.17	Sports	63
2.18	Writing About the Arts: Critics & Columnists	63
2.19	Humor	63
2.20	The Sound of Your Voice	63
2.21	Enjoyment, Fear & Confidence	63
2.22	The Tyranny of the Final Product	63
2.23	A Writer's Decisions	63
2.24	Writing Family History & Memoir	63
2.25	Write as Well as You Can	63
<b>II</b>	<b>Scientific/Mathematical Writings</b>	<b>64</b>
<b>3</b>	<b>Luc Tartar's Writing Styles</b>	<b>65</b>
<b>4</b>	<b>Terence Tao/On Writing</b>	<b>66</b>
4.1	Terence Tao/On Writing/Describe the Results Accurately	67
4.2	Terence Tao/On Writing/Give Appropriate Amounts of Detail	67
4.3	Terence Tao/On Writing/Take Advantage of the English Language	67
4.4	Terence Tao/On Writing/Use Good Notation	68
4.5	Terence Tao/On Writing/Write in Your Own Voice	69
<b>III</b>	<b>Miscellaneous</b>	<b>72</b>
<b>5</b>	<b>How to Write Foreword &amp; Preface</b>	<b>73</b>
	<b>Bibliography</b>	<b>75</b>

# Foreword

My personal journey to “The Garden of Words”<sup>1</sup> – the world of writings. *Why writing?* Because: Instead of provoking a weak & poor defense mechanism passively & unconsciously, you should make your verbal enemies take a step back 1st: Words are weapons.

Although I have studied my Master in France, & later worked in Germany & Austria, I only know some Frenches & German words. I prefer to use Vietnamese & English, even if I have a chance to learn a 3rd one comprehensively. The main purpose of writing is to express ideas, thoughts, emotions, etc., not to show off someone’s linguistic ability, especially the wide range of languages they can use.

## 0.1 Dictionary

To read & write well, the 1st concern is, obviously, to choose the right dictionary/dictionaries.

**Question 0.1.** *Which dictionary/dictionaries should I use?*

- **Cambridge Dictionary:** “Make your words meaningful”
- **Collins Dictionary**
- **Merriam-Webster Dictionary**
- **Oxford Learner’s Dictionaries**

I choose **Oxford Learner’s Dictionaries**. Then the next question is:

**Question 0.2.** *Should I buy Oxford Learner’s Dictionary of Academic English?*

£5.5/year though. Bought: Seem worth it (?).

**Remark 0.1** (Personal style). *I do not like to write the terms “and”, “và”, or “or”, “hoặc”. I write the symbols “&” & “/”, respectively, instead.*

---

<sup>1</sup>IMDb/THE GARDEN OF WORDS (2013), original title: KOTO NO HA NO NIWA.

Part I

Literary Writings

## 0.2 Linguistics

See, e.g., [Wikipedia/linguistics](#)<sup>2</sup>.

---

<sup>2</sup>**linguistics** [n] [uncountable] the scientific study of language or of particular languages.

# Chapter 1

## William Strunk Jr., *The Elements of Style*

**Content.** See [Wikipedia/The Elements of Style](#). “Strunk concentrated on the cultivation of good writing & composition; the original 1918 edition exhorted writers to “omit needless words”, use the **active voice**, & employ **parallelism** appropriately.” [...] “The 3rd edition of *The Elements of Style* (1979) features 54 points: a list of common word-usage errors; 11 rules of punctuation & grammar; 11 principles of writing; 11 matters of form; &, in Chap. V, 21 reminders for better style. The final reminder, the 21st, “Prefer the standard to the offbeat<sup>1</sup>”, is thematically integral<sup>2</sup> to the subject of *The Elements of Style*, yet does stand as a discrete<sup>3</sup> essay about writing lucid<sup>4</sup> prose<sup>5</sup>. To write well, White advises writers to have the proper<sup>6</sup> mind-set, that they write to please themselves, & that they aim for “1 moment of felicity<sup>7</sup>”, a phrase by **Robert Louis Stevenson**. Thus Strunk’s 1918 recommendation:

“Vigorous<sup>8</sup> writing is concise<sup>9</sup>. A sentence should contain no unnecessary words, a paragraph no unnecessary sentences, for the same reason that a drawing should have no unnecessary lines & a machine no unnecessary parts. This requires not that the writer make all his sentences short, or that he avoid all detail & treat his subjects only in outline, but that he make every word tell.” – “Elementary Principles of Composition”, *The Element of Style* Strunk, 1918”

[...] “The 4th edition of *The Elements of Style* (2000), published 54 years after Strunk’s death, omits his stylistic<sup>10</sup> advice about masculine<sup>11</sup> pronouns: “unless the antecedent<sup>12</sup> is or must be feminine”. In its place, the following sentence has been added: “many writers find the use of the generic *he* or *his* to rename indefinite antecedents limiting or offensive.” Further, the retitled entry “They. He or she”, in Chap. IV: *Misused Words & Expressions*, advises the writer to avoid an “unintentional emphasis on the masculine.” – [Wikipedia/The Element of Style/content](#)

**Reception.** “*The Elements of Style* was listed as 1 of the 100 best & most influential<sup>13</sup> books written in English since 1923 by *Time* in its 2011 list. Upon its release, Charles Poor, writing for *The New York Times*, called it “a splendid<sup>14</sup> trophy for all who are interested in reading & writing.” American poet **Dorothy Parker** has, regarding the book, said:

“If you have any young friends who aspire to become writers, the 2nd-greatest favor you can do them is to present them with copies of *The Elements of Style*. The 1st-greatest, of course, is to shoot them now, while they’re happy.”

---

<sup>1</sup>**offbeat** [a] [usually before noun] (*informal*) different from what most people expect, SYNONYM: **unconventional**.

<sup>2</sup>**integral** [a] **1.** being an essential part of something; **2.** [usually before noun] included as part of something, rather than supplied separately; **3.** [usually before noun] having all the parts that are necessary for something to be complete.

<sup>3</sup>**discrete** [a] (*formal or specialist*) independent of other things of the same type, SYNONYM: **separate**.

<sup>4</sup>**lucid** [a] **1.** clearly expressed; easy to understand, SYNONYM: clear; **2.** able to think clearly, especially when somebody cannot usually do this.

<sup>5</sup>**prose** [n] [uncountable] writing that is not poetry.

<sup>6</sup>**proper** [a] **1.** [only before noun] (*especially British English*) right, appropriate or correct; according to the rules, OPPOSITE: **improper**; **2.** [only before noun] (*British English*) considered to be real & of a good enough standard; **3.** socially & morally acceptable, OPPOSITE: **improper**; **4.** [after noun] according to the most exact meaning of the word; **5. proper to somebody/something** belonging to a particular type of person or thing; natural in a particular situation or place.

<sup>7</sup>**felicity** [n] **1.** [uncountable] great happiness; **2.** [uncountable] the quality of being well chosen or suitable; **3. felicities** [plural] well-chosen or successful features, especially in a speech or piece of writing.

<sup>8</sup>**vigorous** [a] **1.** involving physical strength, effort or energy; **2.** done with determination, energy or enthusiasm; **3.** strong & healthy.

<sup>9</sup>**concise** [a] giving only the information that is necessary & important, using few words.

<sup>10</sup>**stylistic** [a] [only before noun] connected with the style that a writer, artist or musician uses.

<sup>11</sup>**masculine** [a] **1.** having the qualities or appearance considered to be typical of men; connected with or like men; **2.** (in some languages) belonging to a class of nouns, pronouns or adjectives that have masculine gender, not feminine or neuter.

<sup>12</sup>**antecedent** [n] a thing or an event that exists or comes before something else & has an influence on it; [a] existing or coming before something else, & having an influence on it.

<sup>13</sup>**influential** [a] having a lot of influence on the way that somebody/something behaves or develops, or on the way that somebody thinks.

<sup>14</sup>**splendid** [a] (*especially British English*) **1.** very impressive; very beautiful; **2.** (*old-fashioned*) excellent; very good, SYNONYM: great.

Criticism<sup>15</sup> of *Strunk & White* has largely focused on claims that it has a **prescriptivist**<sup>16</sup> nature, or that it has become a general **anachronism**<sup>17</sup> in the face of modern English usage.

In criticizing *The Elements of Style*, **Geoffrey Pullum**, professor of **linguistics** at the **University of Edinburgh**, & co-author of *The Cambridge Grammar of the English Language* (2002), said that:

“The book’s toxic mix of **purism**<sup>18</sup>, **atavism**, & personal **eccentricity**<sup>19</sup> is not underpinned<sup>20</sup> by a proper grounding<sup>21</sup> in English grammar. It is often so misguided that the authors appear not to notice their own egregious<sup>22</sup> flouting<sup>23</sup> of its own rules . . . It’s sad. Several generations of college students learned their grammar from the uninformed<sup>24</sup> bossiness<sup>25</sup> of *Strunk & White*, & the result is a nation of educated people who know they feel vaguely<sup>26</sup> anxious<sup>27</sup> & insecure<sup>28</sup> whenever they write *however* or *than me* or *was* or *which*, but can’t tell you why.”

Pullum has argued, e.g., that the authors misunderstood what constitutes the **passive voice**<sup>29</sup>, & he criticized their proscription<sup>30</sup> of established & unproblematic<sup>31</sup> English usages, e.g. the **split infinitive** & the use of *which* in a restrictive **relative clause**. On **Language Log**, a blog about language written by **linguists**, he further criticized *The Elements of Style* for promoting **linguistic prescriptivism** & **hypercorrection** among **Anglophones**, & called it “the book that ate American’s brain”.

*The Boston Globe*’s review described *The Elements of Style Illustrated* (2005), with illustrations by Maira Kalman, as an “aging zombie of a book . . . a hodgepodge<sup>32</sup>, its now-antiquated<sup>33</sup> **pet peeves** jostling for<sup>34</sup> space with 1970s taboos<sup>35</sup> & 1990s computer advice”.

Nevertheless, many contemporary<sup>36</sup> authors still recommend it highly. Their praise<sup>37</sup> tends to focus on its characterization<sup>38</sup> of [good writing & how to achieve it], grammar being just 1 element of that purpose. In **On writing** (2000, p. 11), **Stephen King** writes:

“There is little or no detectable **bullshit** in that book. (Of course, it’s short; at 85 pages it’s much shorter than this one.) I’ll tell you right now that every aspiring writer should read *The Elements of Style*. Rule 17 in the chapter titled *Principles of Composition* is ‘Omit needless words.’ I will try to do that here.”

In 2011, Tim Skern remarked that *The Elements of Style* “remains the best book available on writing good English.”

In 2013, **Neville Gwynne** reproduced *The Elements of Style* in his work *Gwynne’s Grammar*. Britt Peterson of the *Boston Globe* wrote that his inclusion of the book was a “curious<sup>39</sup> addition”.

<sup>15</sup>**criticism** [n] **1.** [uncountable, countable] the act of expressing disapproval of somebody/something & opinions about their faults or bad qualities; a statement showing disapproval; **2.** [uncountable] the work or activity of analyzing & making fair, careful judgments about somebody/something, especially books, music, etc.

<sup>16</sup>**prescriptive** [a] **1.** telling people what should be done or how something should be done; **2.** (*linguistics*) telling people how a language should be used, rather than describing how it is used, OPPOSITE: **descriptive**.

<sup>17</sup>**anachronism** [n] **1.** [countable] a person, a custom or an idea that seems old-fashioned & does not belong to the present; **2.** [countable, uncountable] something that is placed, e.g., in a book or play, in the wrong period of history; the fact of placing something in the wrong period of history.

<sup>18</sup>**purism** [n] [uncountable] the belief that things should be done in the traditional way & that there are correct forms in languages, art, etc. that should be followed.

<sup>19</sup>**eccentricity** [n] **1.** [uncountable] behavior that people think is strange or unusual; the quality of being unusual & different from other people; **2.** [countable, usually plural] an unusual act or habit.

<sup>20</sup>**underpin** [v] to support or form the basis of something.

<sup>21</sup>**grounding** [n] [singular, uncountable] knowledge & understanding of the basic parts of a subject; a basis for something.

<sup>22</sup>**egregious** [a] (*formal*) extremely bad.

<sup>23</sup>**flout** [v] **flout something** to show that you have no respect for a law, etc. by openly not obeying it, SYNONYM: **defy**.

<sup>24</sup>**uninformed** [a] having or showing a lack of knowledge or information about something, OPPOSITE: **informed**.

<sup>25</sup>**bossiness** [n] [uncountable] (*disapproving*) bossy behavior.

<sup>26</sup>**vaguely** [adv] **1.** in a way that is not detailed or exact; **2.** slightly.

<sup>27</sup>**anxious** [a] **1. anxious (about something)** feeling worried or nervous; **2.** wanting something very much.

<sup>28</sup>**insecure** [a] **1.** not confident, especially about yourself or your abilities, OPPOSITE: **secure**; **2.** not safe or protected, OPPOSITE: **secure**.

<sup>29</sup>NQBH: Personally, I prefer the passive voice to the active one.

<sup>30</sup>**proscription** [n] [countable, uncountable] (*formal*) **proscription (against/on something)** the act of saying officially that something is banned; the stat of being banned.

<sup>31</sup>**unproblematic** [a] not having or causing problems, OPPOSITE: **problematic**.

<sup>32</sup>**hodgepodge** [n] (*North American English*) (also **hotchpotch**, *especially in British English*) [singular] (*informal*) a number of things mixed together without any particular order or reason.

<sup>33</sup>**antiquated** [a] (*usually disapproving*) (of things or ideas) old-fashioned & no longer suitable for modern conditions, SYNONYM: **outdated**.

<sup>34</sup>**jostle for** [phrasal verb] **jostle for something** to compete strongly & with force for something.

<sup>35</sup>**taboo** [n] **1. taboo (against/on something)** a cultural or religious custom that does not allow people to do, use or talk about a particular thing; **2. taboo (against/on something)** a general agreement not to do something or talk about something.

<sup>36</sup>**contemporary** [a] **1.** belonging to the present time, SYNONYM **modern**; **2.** (especially of people & society) belonging to the same time as somebody/something else.

<sup>37</sup>**praise** [v] **1.** to express your approval or admiration for somebody/something; **2. praise God** to express your thanks to or your respect for God.

<sup>38</sup>**characterization** [n] [uncountable, countable] **1. characterization (of something)** the process of discovering or describing the qualities or features of something; the result of this process; **2.** the way in which the characters in a story, play or film are made to seem real.

<sup>39</sup>**curious** [a] **1.** having a strong desire to know about something; **2.** strange & unusual.



In 2016, the Open Syllabus Project lists *The Elements of Style* as the most frequently assigned text in US academic syllabuses, based on an analysis of 933,635 texts appearing in over 1 million syllabuses.” – [Wikipedia/The Elements of Style/reception](#)

“The 1st writer I watched at work was my stepfather, E. B. White.<sup>40</sup> Each Tuesday morning, he would close his study door & sit down to write the “Notes & Comment” page for *The New Yorker*. The task was familiar to him – he was required to file a few hundred words of editorial<sup>41</sup> of personal commentary on some topic in or out of the news that week – but the sounds of his typewriter<sup>42 43</sup> from his room came in hesitant<sup>44</sup> bursts<sup>45</sup>, with long silences in between. Hours went by. Summoned at last for lunch, he was silent & preoccupied<sup>46</sup>, & soon excused himself to get back to the job. When the copy went off at last, in the afternoon RFD pouch<sup>47</sup> – we were in Maine, a day’s mail away from New York – he rarely seemed satisfied. “It isn’t good enough.”<sup>48</sup> he said sometimes, “I wish it were better.”

Writing is hard, even for authors who do it all the time. Less frequent practitioners – the job applicant; the business executive with an annual report to get out; the high school senior with a Faulkner assignment; the graduate-school student with her thesis proposal; the writer of a letter of condolence<sup>49</sup> – often get stuck in an awkward<sup>50</sup> passage or find a muddle<sup>51</sup> on their screens, & then blame themselves. What should be easy & flowing looks tangled<sup>52</sup> or feeble<sup>53</sup> or overblown<sup>54</sup> – not what was meant at all. What’s wrong with me, each one thinks. Why can’t I get this right?”

[...] White knew that a compendium<sup>55</sup> of specific tips – about singular & plural verbs, parentheses, the “that” – “which” scuffle<sup>56</sup>, & many others – could clear up a recalcitrant<sup>57</sup> sentence or subclause when quickly reconsulted<sup>58</sup>, & that the larger principles needed to be kept in plain sight, like a wall sampler.

How simple they look, set down here in White’s last chapter: “Write in a way that comes naturally,” “Revise & rewrite,” “Do not explain too much,” & the rest; above all, the cleansing<sup>59</sup>, clarion<sup>60</sup> “Be clear.” How often I have turned to them, in the book or in my mind, while trying to start or unblock or revise some piece of my own writing! They help – they really do. They work. They are the way.

E. B. White’s prose is celebrated for its ease<sup>61</sup> & clarity<sup>62</sup> – just think of *Charlotte’s Web* – but maintaining this standard

<sup>40</sup> Sự ảnh hưởng, đặc biệt đến nhân cách & việc lựa chọn nghề nghiệp, của những hình mẫu đầu tiên mà ta, 1 cách tình cờ hay được số phận sắp đặt, gặp gỡ trong cuộc đời.

<sup>41</sup>**editorial** [a] [usually before noun] connected with the task of preparing something e.g. a newspaper, a book, or a television or radio programme, to be published or broadcast; [n] an important article in a journal or a newspaper, that expresses the editor’s opinion about an issue.

<sup>42</sup>**typewriter** [n] a machine that produces writing similar to print. It has keys that you press to make metal letters or signs hit a piece of paper through a long, narrow piece of cloth covered with ink (= colored liquid).

<sup>43</sup>NQBH: I like the term “typewriter” in any literary scene., which sounds traditional & sexy, opposite to personal notebooks/laptop now: modern & robust.

<sup>44</sup>**hesitant** [a] slow to speak or act because you feel uncertain, embarrassed or unwilling.

<sup>45</sup>**burst** [v] **1.** [intransitive, transitive] to break open or apart, especially because of pressure from inside; to make something break in this way; **2.** [intransitive] + **adv./prep.** to go or come from somewhere suddenly; **burst into something** [phrasal verb] to start producing something suddenly & with great force; [n] a short period of a particular activity or strong emotion that often starts suddenly.

<sup>46</sup>**preoccupied** [a] thinking &/or worrying continuously about something so that you do not pay attention to other things.

<sup>47</sup>**pouch** [n] **1.** a small bag, usually made of leather, & often carried in a pocket or attached to a belt; **2.** a large bag for carrying letters, especially official ones; **3.** a pocket of skin on the stomach of some female marsupial animals, e.g. kangaroos, in which they carry their young; **4.** a pocket of skin in the cheeks of some animals, e.g. hamsters, in which they store food.

<sup>48</sup>“The quest for perfection can never end.”

<sup>49</sup>**condolence** [n] [countable, usually plural, uncountable] sympathy that you feel for somebody when a person in their family or that they know well has died; an expression of this sympathy.

<sup>50</sup>**awkward** [a] **1.** embarrassed; making you feel embarrassed; **2.** difficult to deal with, SYNONYM: **difficult**; **3.** not convenient; **4.** difficult because of its shape or design; **5.** not moving in an easy way; not comfortable or elegant.

<sup>51</sup>**muddle** [v] (*especially British English*) **1.** to put things in the wrong order or mix them up; **2.** muddle somebody (up) to confuse somebody; **3.** muddle somebody/something (up) | **muddle A (up) with B** to confuse 1 person or thing with another, SYNONYM: **mix up**.

<sup>52</sup>**tangled** [a] **1.** twisted together in an untidy way; **2.** complicated, & not easy to understand.

<sup>53</sup>**feeble** [a] **1.** very weak; **2.** not effective; not showing energy or effort.

<sup>54</sup>**overblown** [a] **1.** that is made to seem larger, more impressive or more important than it really is, SYNONYM: **exaggerated**; **2.** (of flowers) past the best, most beautiful stage.

<sup>55</sup>**compendium** [n] (plural **compendia**, **compendiums**) a collection of facts, drawings & photographs on a particular subject, especially in a book.

<sup>56</sup>**scuffle** [n] **scuffle (with somebody)** | **scuffle (between A & B)** a short & not very violent fight or struggle; [v] **1.** [intransitive] **scuffle (with somebody)** (of 2 or more people) to fight or struggle with each other for a short time, in a way that is not very serious; **2.** [intransitive] + **adv./prep.** to move quickly making a quiet rubbing noise.

<sup>57</sup>**recalcitrant** [a] (*formal*) unwilling to obey rules or follow instructions; difficult to control.

<sup>58</sup>**consult** [v] **1.** [transitive, intransitive] to discuss something with somebody to get their permission for something, or to help you make a decision; **2.** [transitive, intransitive] to go to somebody for information or advice, especially an expert e.g. a doctor or lawyer; **3.** [transitive] **consult something** to look in or at something to get information, SYNONYM: **refer to something**.

<sup>59</sup>**cleanse** [v] **1.** [transitive, intransitive] **cleanse (something)** to clean your skin or a wound; **2.** [transitive] **cleanse somebody (of/from something)** (*literary*) to take away somebody’s guilty feelings or sin.

<sup>60</sup>**clarion** [n] **1.** a medieval trumpet with clear shrill tones; **2.** the sound of or as if of a clarion’ [a] brilliantly clear; loud & clear.

<sup>61</sup>**ease** [n] [uncountable] **1.** lack of difficulty or effort, OPPOSITE: **difficulty**; **2.** the state of feeling relaxed or comfortable, without anxiety, problems or pain.

<sup>62</sup>**clarity** [n] [uncountable] **1.** the quality of being expressed clearly; **2.** the ability to think about or understand something clearly; **3.** if a

required endless attention. When the new issue of *The New Yorker* turned up in Maine, I sometimes saw him reading his “Comment” piece over to himself, with only a slightly different expression than the one he’d worn on the day it went off. Well, O.K., he seemed to be saying. [At least I got the elements right.]

This edition has been modestly<sup>63</sup> updated, with word processors & air conditioners making their 1st appearance among White’s references, & with a light redistribution of genders to permit a feminine pronoun or female farmer to take their places among the males who once innocently<sup>64</sup> served him.” [...] “What is not here is anything about E-mail – the rules-free, lower-case flow that cheerfully keeps us in touch these days. E-mail is conversation, & it may be replacing the sweet & endless talking we once sustained<sup>65</sup> (& tucked away<sup>66</sup>) within the informal letter. But we are all writers & readers as well as communicators, with [the need at times to please & satisfy ourselves] (as White put it) with the [clear & almost perfect thought].” – Strunk Jr. and White, 2019, *Foreword* by Roger Angell

“I [E. B. White] passed the course, graduated from the university, & [forgot the book but not the professor].” [...]

“*The Elements of Style*, when I [E. B. White] reexamined it in 1957, seemed to me to contain [rich deposits<sup>67</sup> of gold]. It was Will Strunk’s *parvum opus*<sup>68</sup>, his attempt to cut the vast tangle<sup>69</sup> of English rhetoric<sup>70</sup> down to size & write its rules & principles on the head of a pin<sup>71</sup>. Will himself had hung the tag “little” on the book; he referred to it sardonically<sup>72</sup> & with secret pride as “the *little book*,” always giving the word “little” a special twist, as though he were putting a spin on a ball. In its original form, it was a 43 page summation of the case for cleanliness, accuracy<sup>73</sup>, & brevity<sup>74</sup> in the use of English. Today, 52 years later, its vigor<sup>75</sup> is unimpaired<sup>76</sup>, & for sheer<sup>77</sup> pith<sup>78</sup> I think it probably sets a record that is not likely to be broken. Even after I got through tampering with<sup>79</sup> it, it was still a tiny thing, [a barely tarnished<sup>80</sup> gem<sup>81</sup>]. 7 rules of usage, 11 principles of composition<sup>82</sup>, a few matters of form, & a list of words & expressions commonly misused – that was the sum & substance<sup>83</sup> of Prof. Strunk’s work. Somewhat audaciously<sup>84</sup>, & in an attempt to give my publisher his money’s worth, I [E. B. White] added a chapter called “An Approach to Style,” setting forth my own prejudices<sup>85</sup>, my notions of error, my articles of faith. This chapter (Chap. V) is addressed particularly to those who feel that English prose composition is not

picture, substance or sound has clarity, you can see or hear it very clearly, or see through it easily.

<sup>63</sup>**modest** [a] **1.** fairly limited or small in amount; **2.** not expensive, rich or impressive; **3.** (of people, especially women, or their clothes) not showing too much of the body; not intended to attract attention, especially in a sexual way; **4.** (*approving*) not talking much about your own abilities or possessions.

<sup>64</sup>**innocent** [a] **1.** not guilty of a crime, etc.; not having done something wrong, OPPOSITE: **guilty**; **2.** [only before noun] suffering harm or being killed because of a crime, war, etc. although not directly involved in it; **3.** having little experience of evil or unpleasant things, or of sexual matters; **4.** not intended to cause harm or upset somebody, SYNONYM: **harmless**.

<sup>65</sup>**sustain** [v] **1. sustain somebody/something** to provide enough of what somebody/something needs in order to live or exist; **2.** to make something continue for some time without becoming less, SYNONYM: **maintain**; **3. sustain something** (*formal*) to experience something bad, SYNONYM: **suffer**; **4. sustain something** to provide evidence to support an opinion, a theory, etc., SYNONYM: **uphold**; **5. sustain something** (*law*) to decide that a claim, etc. is valid, SYNONYM: **uphold**.

<sup>66</sup>**tuck away** [phrasal verb] **tuck something** ↔ **away 1. be tucked away** to be located in a quiet place, where not many people go; **2.** to hide something somewhere or keep it in a safe place; **3.** (*British English, informal*) to eat a lot of food.

<sup>68</sup>**parvum opus** [from Latin] [n] a little work, a small but meaningful work of an artist or writer.

<sup>69</sup>**tangle** [n] **1.** a twisted mass of threads, hair, etc. that cannot be easily separated; **2.** a lack of order; a confused state; **3.** (*informal*) a disagreement or fight; [v] [transitive, intransitive] **tangle (something) up** to twist something into an untidy mass; to become twisted in this way.

<sup>70</sup>**rhetoric** [n] [uncountable] **1.** (*often disapproving*) speech or writing that is intended to influence people, but that is not completely honest or sincere; **2.** the skill of using language in speech or writing in a special way that influences or entertains people.)

<sup>71</sup>**pin** [n] **1.** a short thin piece of stiff wire with a sharp point at 1 end & a round head at the other, used to hold or attach things; **2.** a short piece of metal or other material, used to hold things together; **3.** a piece of metal with a sharp point, worn for decoration; **4.** 1 of the metal parts that stick out of an electric plug & fit into a socket; [v] **pin something** (+ *adv./prep.*) to attach something onto another thing or join things together with a pin, etc.; **pin something down** [phrasal verb] to explain or understand something exactly.

<sup>72</sup>**sardonically** [adv] (*disapproving*) in a way that shows that you think that you are better than other people & do not take them seriously, SYNONYM: **mockingly**.

<sup>73</sup>**accuracy** [n] **1.** [uncountable] the state of being exact or correct, OPPOSITE: **inaccuracy**; **2.** [uncountable, countable] (*specialist*) the degree to which the result of a measurement or calculation matches the correct value or a standard, OPPOSITE: **inaccuracy**.

<sup>74</sup>**brevity** [n] [uncountable] **1.** the quality of using few words when speaking or writing; **2. brevity (of something)** the fact of lasting a short time.

<sup>75</sup>**vigor** [n] [uncountable] **1.** effort, energy, & enthusiasm; **2. vigor (of something)** physical strength; good health.

<sup>76</sup>**unimpaired** [a] (*formal*) not damaged or made less good, OPPOSITE: **impaired**.

<sup>77</sup>**sheer** [a] **1.** [only before noun] used to emphasize the size, degree or amount of something; nothing but; **2.** very steep.

<sup>78</sup>**pith** [n] [uncountable] **1.** a soft dry white substance inside the skin of oranges & some other fruits; **2.** the essential or most important part of something.

<sup>79</sup>**tamper with** [phrasal verb] **tamper with something** to make changes to something without permission, especially in order to damage it, SYNONYM: **interfere with**.

<sup>82</sup>**composition** [n] **1.** [uncountable] the different parts that something is made of; the way in which the different parts are organized; **2.** [countable] a piece of music or a poem; **3.** [uncountable] the act of writing a piece of music or a poem; **4.** [uncountable] (*art*) the arrangement of people or objects in a painting, photograph or scene of a film.

<sup>83</sup>**substance** [n] **1.** a type of solid, liquid or gas that has particular qualities; **2.** [countable] a drug or chemical, especially an illegal one, that has a particular effect on the mind or body; **3.** [uncountable] the most important or main part of something; **4.** [uncountable] (*formal*) importance; **5.** [uncountable] the quality of being based on facts or the truth.

<sup>84</sup>**audaciously** [adv] (*formal*) in a way that shows you are willing to take risks or to do something that shocks people.

<sup>85</sup>**prejudice** [n] [uncountable, countable] an unreasonable dislike of a person, group, etc., especially when it is based on their race, religion, sex, etc.

only a necessary skill but a sensible pursuit as well – a way to spend one’s days. I think Prof. Strunk would not object to that.”

[...] “I have now completed a 3rd revision. Chap. IV has been refurbished<sup>86</sup> with words & expressions of a recent vintage<sup>87</sup>; 4 rules of usage have been added to Chap. I. Fresh examples have been added to some of the rules & principles, amplification<sup>88</sup> has reared<sup>89</sup> its head in a few places in the text where I felt an assault<sup>90</sup> could successfully be made on the bastions<sup>91</sup> of its brevity, & in general the book has received a thorough overhaul<sup>92</sup> – to correct errors, delete bewhiskered<sup>93</sup> entries, & enliven<sup>94</sup> the argument.

Prof. Strunk was a positive man. His book contains rules of grammar phrased as direct orders. In the main I [E. B. White] have not tried to soften his commands, or modify his pronouncements<sup>95</sup>, or remove the special objects of his scorn<sup>96</sup>. I have tried, instead, to preserve<sup>97</sup> the flavor<sup>98</sup> of his discontent<sup>99</sup> while slightly enlarging the scope of the discussion. *The Elements of Style* does not pretend<sup>100</sup> to survey<sup>101</sup> the whole field. Rather it proposes<sup>102</sup> to give in brief space the principal<sup>103</sup> requirements of plain<sup>104</sup> English style. It concentrates<sup>105</sup> on fundamentals<sup>106</sup>: the rules of usage & principles of composition

<sup>86</sup>**refurbish** [v] **refurbish something** to clean & decorate a room, building, etc. in order to make it more attractive, more useful, etc.

<sup>87</sup>**vintage** [n] **1.** the wine that was produced in a particular year or place; the year in which it was produced; **2.** [usually singular] the period or season of gathering grapes for making wine; [a] [only before noun] **1. vintage** wine is of very good quality & has been stored for several years; **2.** (British English) (of a vehicle) made between 1919 & 1930 & admired for its style & interest; **3.** typical of a period in the past & of high quality; the best work of the particular person; **4. vintage year** a particular good & successful year.

<sup>88</sup>**amplification** [n] [uncountable] **1. amplification (of something)** the process of increasing the amplitude of an electrical signal; **2.** (biochemistry) **amplification (of something)** the process by which many copies of something, e.g. a gene, are made; **3. amplification (of something)** the action of making something greater or easier to notice; **4.** the action of adding details to a story, statement, etc.; details added to a story, statement, etc.

<sup>89</sup>**rear** [v] **1. rear somebody/something** [often passive] to care for young children or animals until they are fully grown, SYNONYM: **raise**; **2. rear something** to breed or keep animals or birds, e.g. on a farm; **something rears its head** [idiom] (of something unpleasant) to appear or happen; [n] (usually **the rear**) [singular] the back part of something; [a] [only before noun] at or near the back of something.

<sup>90</sup>**assault** [n] **1.** [uncountable, countable] the crime of attacking somebody physically; in law, **assault** is an act that threatens physical harm to somebody, whether or not actual harm is done: *to commit/be charged with assault*; **2.** [countable] (by an army, etc.) the act of attacking somebody/something, SYNONYM: **attack**; **3.** [countable, usually singular, uncountable] an act of criticizing or attacking somebody/something severely; [v] **assault somebody** to attack somebody physically.

<sup>91</sup>**bastion** [n] **1. (formal)** a group of people or a system that protects a way of life or a belief when it seems that it may disappear; **2.** a place that military forces are defending.

<sup>92</sup>**overhaul** [n] an examination of a machine or system, including doing repairs on it or making changes to it; [v] **1. overhaul something** to examine every part of a machine, system, etc. & make any necessary changes or repairs; **2. overhaul somebody** to come from behind a person you are competing against in a race & go past them, SYNONYM: **overtake**.

<sup>93</sup>**bewhiskered** [a] **1.** having whiskers; bearded; **2.** ancient, as a witticism, expression, etc.; passé; hoary.

<sup>94</sup>**enliven** [v] (*formal*) **enliven something** to make something more interesting or more fun.

<sup>95</sup>**pronouncement** [n] a formal public statement.

<sup>96</sup>**scorn** [n] [uncountable] a strong feeling that somebody/something is stupid or not good enough, usually shown by the way you speak, SYNONYM: **contempt**; [v] **1. scorn somebody/something** to feel or show that you think somebody/something is stupid & you do not respect them or it, SYNONYM: **dismiss**; **2. (formal)** to refuse to have or do something because you are too proud.

<sup>97</sup>**preserve** [v] **1. preserve something** to keep a particular quality or feature; **2.** to keep something safe from harm, in good condition or in its original state; **3.** to prevent something from decaying, by treating it in a particular way; [n] [singular] an activity, job or interest that is thought to be suitable for 1 particular person or group of people.

<sup>98</sup>**flavor** [n] **1.** [uncountable] **flavor (of something)** how food or drink tastes, SYNONYM: **taste**; **2.** [countable] a particular type of taste; **3.** [singular] a particular quality or atmosphere; **4.** [singular] **a/the flavor of something** an idea of what something is like.

<sup>99</sup>**discontent** [n] (also **discontentment**) **1.** [uncountable] a feeling of being unhappy because you are not satisfied with a particular situation, SYNONYM: **dissatisfaction**; **2.** [countable] **discontent (of somebody)** a thing that makes you feel unhappy & not satisfied with a particular situation, SYNONYM: **dissatisfaction**.

<sup>100</sup>**pretend** [v] **1.** to behave in a particular way, in order to make other people believe something that is not true; **2.** (usually used in negative sentences & questions) to claim to be, do or have something, especially when this is not true.

<sup>101</sup>**survey** [n] **1. survey** (of somebody/something) an investigation of the opinions, behavior, etc. of a particular group of people, which is usually done by asking them questions; **2.** an act of examining & recording the measurements, features, etc. of an area of land in order to make a map or plan of it; **3. survey (of something)** a general study, view or description of something; [v] **1. survey somebody/something** to investigate the opinions or behavior of a group of people by asking them a series of questions; **2. survey something** to study & give a general description of something; **3. survey something** to measure & record the features of an area of land, e.g. in order to make a map or in preparation for building; **4. survey something** to look carefully at the whole of something, especially in order to get a general impression of it, SYNONYM: **inspect**.

<sup>102</sup>**propose** [v] **1.** to suggest a plan or an idea for people to consider & decide on; **2.** to suggest an explanation of something for people to consider.

<sup>103</sup>**principal** [a] [only before noun] main; most important.

<sup>104</sup>**plain** [a] **1.** easy to see or understand, SYNONYM: **clear**; **2.** [only before noun] expressed in a clear & simple way, without using technical language; **3.** not trying to deceive anyone; honest & direct; **4.** not decorated or complicated; simple; in computing, **plain text** is data representing text that is not written in code or using special formatting & can be read, displayed or printed without much processing: *Mathematical formulae are an example of content that cannot be represented satisfactorily via plain text.*; **5.** without marks or a pattern on it; **6.** [only before noun] (used for emphasis) simple; nothing but. SYNONYM: **sheer**.

<sup>105</sup>**concentrate** [v] **1.** [transitive, often passive] **concentrate something + adv./prep.** to bring something together in 1 place; **2.** [intransitive, transitive] to give all your attention to something & not think about anything else; **3.** [transitive] **concentrate something** to increase the strength of a substance by reducing its volume, e.g. by boiling it; **concentrate on something** [phrasal verb] to spend more time doing 1 particular thing than others; [n] [countable, uncountable] **concentrate (of something)** a substance that is made stronger because water or other substances have been removed.

<sup>106</sup>**fundamentals** [n] [plural] **fundamentals (of something)** the basic & most important parts of something.

most commonly violated<sup>107</sup>.

The reader will soon discover that these rules & principles are in the form of sharp commands, Sergeant<sup>108</sup> Strunk snapping<sup>109</sup> orders to his platoon<sup>110</sup>. “Do not join independent clauses with a comma.” (Rule 5.) “Do not break sentences in 2.” (Rule 6.) “Use the active voice.” (Rule 14.) “Omit<sup>111</sup> needless<sup>112</sup> words.” (Rule 17.) “Avoid a succession<sup>113</sup> of loose<sup>114</sup> sentences.” (Rule 18.) “In summaries, keep to 1 tense.” (Rule 21.) Each rule or principle is followed by a short hortatory<sup>115</sup> essay, & usually the exhortation<sup>116</sup> is followed by, or interlarded<sup>117</sup> with, examples in parallel columns – the true vs. the false, the right vs. the wrong, the timid<sup>118</sup> vs. the bold, the ragged<sup>119</sup> vs. the trim<sup>120</sup>. From every line there peers out at me the puckish<sup>121</sup> face of my professor, his short hair parted neatly<sup>122</sup> in the middle & combed down over his forehead, his eyes blinking incessantly<sup>123</sup> behind steel-rimmed spectacles<sup>124</sup> as though he had just emerged into strong light, his lips nibbling each other like nervous horses, his smile shuttling to & fro under a carefully edged mustache.

“Omit needless words!” cries the author on p. 23, & into that imperative<sup>125</sup> Will Strunk really put his heart & soul. In the days when I was sitting in his class, he omitted so many needless words, & omitted them so forcibly<sup>126</sup> & with such eagerness<sup>127</sup> & obvious relish<sup>128</sup>, that he often seemed in the position of having shortchanged<sup>129</sup> himself – a man left with nothing more to say yet with time to fill, a radio prophet who had outdistanced<sup>130</sup> the clock. Will Strunk got out of this predicament<sup>131</sup> by a simple trick: he uttered<sup>132</sup> every sentence 3 times. When he delivered his oration<sup>133</sup> on brevity to the

<sup>107</sup>**violet** [v] **1. violate something** to go against or refuse to obey a law, an agreement, etc.; **2. violate something** to not treat something with respect.

<sup>108</sup>**sergeant** [n] (abbr., **Sergt**, **Sgt**) **1.** a member of 1 of the middle ranks in the army & the air force, below an officer; **2.** (in a UK) a police officer just below the rank of an inspector; **3.** (in the US) a police officer just below the rank of a lieutenant or captain.

<sup>109</sup>**snap** [v] **break** **1.** [transitive, intransitive] to break something suddenly with a sharp noise; to be broken in this way; *take photograph* **2.** [transitive, intransitive] (*informal*) to take a photograph; *open/close/move into position* **3.** [intransitive, transitive] to move, or to move something, into a particular position quickly, especially with a sudden sharp noise; *speak impatiently* **4.** [transitive, intransitive] to speak or say something in an impatient, usually angry, voice; *of animal* **5.** [intransitive] **snap (at somebody/something)** to try to bite somebody/something, SYNONYM: **nip**; *lose control* **6.** [intransitive] to suddenly be unable to control your feelings any longer because the situation has become too difficult; *fasten clothing* **7.** [intransitive, transitive] **snap (something)** (*North American English*) to fasten a piece of clothing with a snap; *in American football* **8.** [transitive] **snap something** (*sport*) (in American football) to start play by passing the ball back between your legs.

<sup>110</sup>**platoon** [n] a small group of soldiers that is part of a company & commanded by a lieutenant.

<sup>111</sup>**omit** [v] **1.** to not include something/somebody, either deliberately or because you have forgotten it/them, SYNONYM: **leave somebody/something out (of something)**; **2. omit to do something** to not do or fail to do something.

<sup>112</sup>**needless** [a] (of something bad) not necessary; that could be avoided, SYNONYM: unnecessary.

<sup>113</sup>**succession** [n] **1.** [countable, usually singular] a number of things or people that follow each other in time or order, SYNONYM: **series**; **2.** [uncountable] the act of taking over an official position or title; **3.** [uncountable] the right to take over an official position or title, especially to become the king or queen of a country.

<sup>114</sup>**loose** [a] **1.** not firmly fixed where it should be; that can become separated from something; **2.** not tightly packed together; not solid or hard; **3.** not strictly organized or controlled; **4.** not exact; not very careful; **5.** (of clothes) not fitting closely, OPPOSITE: **tight**; **6.** not tied together; not held in position by anything or contained in anything; **7.** (*medical*) (of body waste) having too much liquid in it.

<sup>115</sup>**hortatory** [a] trying to strongly encourage or persuade someone to do something.

<sup>116</sup>**exhortation** [n] [countable, uncountable] (*formal*) **exhortation (to do something)** an act of trying very hard to persuade somebody to do something.

<sup>117</sup>**interlard** [v] (used with object) **1.** to diversify by adding or interjecting something unique, striking, or contrasting (usually followed by *with*); **2.** (of things) to be intermixed in.

<sup>118</sup>**timid** [a] shy & nervous; not brave.

<sup>119</sup>**ragged** [a] **1.** (of clothes) old & torn, SYNONYM: **shabby**; **2.** (of people) wearing old or torn clothes; **3.** having an outline, an edge or a surface that is not straight or even; **4.** not smooth or regular; not showing control or careful preparation; **5.** (*informal*) very tired, especially after physical effort.

<sup>120</sup>**trim** [v] **1. trim something** to make something neater, smaller, better, etc., by cutting parts from it; **2.** to cut away unnecessary parts from something; **3.** [usually passive] **trim something (with something)** to decorate something, especially around its edges.

<sup>121</sup>**puckish** [a] [usually before noun] (*literary*) enjoying playing tricks on other people, SYNONYM: **mischievous**.

<sup>122</sup>**neat** [a] **1.** in good order; carefully done or arranged; **2.** simple but clever; **3.** containing or made out of just 1 substance; not mixed with anything else.

<sup>123</sup>**incessantly** [adv] (*usually disapproving*) without stopping, SYNONYM: **constantly**.

<sup>124</sup>**spectacle** [n] **1.** [countable, uncountable] **spectacle (of something)** a performance or an event that is very impressive & exciting to look at; **2.** [singular] **spectacle (of something)** an unusual, embarrassing or sad sight or situation that attracts a lot of attention; **3.** (**spectacles**) [plural] (*formal*) = **glasses**.

<sup>125</sup>**imperative** [n] a thing that is very important & needs immediate attention or action; [a] [not usually before noun] very important & needing immediate attention or action, SYNONYM: **vital**.

<sup>126</sup>**forcibly** [adv] **1.** in a way that involves the use of physical force; **2.** in a way that makes something very clear.

<sup>127</sup>**eager** [a] very interested & excited by something that is going to happen or about something that you want to do, SYNONYM: **keen**.

<sup>128</sup>**relish** [v] to get great pleasure from something; to want very much to do or have something, SYNONYM: **enjoy**; [n] **1.** [uncountable] great pleasure; **2.** [uncountable, countable] a cold, thick, spicy sauce made from fruit & vegetables that have been boiled, that is served with meat, cheese, etc.

<sup>129</sup>**short-change** [v] [often passive] **1. short-change somebody** to give back less than the correct amount of money to somebody who has paid for something with more than the exact price; **2. short-change somebody** to treat somebody unfairly by not giving them what they have earned or deserve.

<sup>130</sup>**outdistance** [v] **outdistance somebody/something** to leave somebody/something behind by going faster, further, etc.; to be better than somebody/something, SYNONYM: **outstrip**.

<sup>131</sup>**predicament** [n] a difficult or an unpleasant situation, especially one where it is difficult to know what to do, SYNONYM: **quandary**.

<sup>132</sup>**utter** [v] **utter something** to make a sound with your voice; to say something.

<sup>133</sup>**oration** [n] (*formal*) a formal speech made on a public occasion, especially as part of a ceremony.



class, he leaned forward over his desk, grasped his coat lapels<sup>134</sup> in his hands, &, in a husky<sup>135</sup>, conspiratorial<sup>136</sup> voice, said, “Rule 17. Omit needless words! Omit needless words! Omit needless word!”

He was a memorable<sup>137</sup> man, friendly & funny. Under the remembered sting of his kindly lash<sup>138</sup>, I have been trying to omit needless words since 1919, & although there are still many words that cry for omission & the huge task will never be accomplished, it is exciting to me to reread to masterly Strunkian elaboration<sup>139</sup> of this noble<sup>140</sup> theme<sup>141</sup>. It goes:

*Vigorous writing is concise. A sentence should contain no unnecessary words, a paragraph no unnecessary sentences, for the same reason that a drawing should have no unnecessary lines & a machine no unnecessary parts. This requires not that the writer make all sentences short or avoid all detail & treat subjects only in outline, but that every word tell.*

There you have a short, valuable essay on the nature & beauty of brevity – 59 words that could change the world. Having recovered from his adventure in prolixity<sup>142</sup> (59 words were a lot of words in the tight world of William Strunk Jr.), the professor proceeds to give a few quick lessons in pruning<sup>143</sup>. Students learn to cut the dead-wood from “this is a subject that,” reducing it to “this subject,” a saving of 3 words. They learn to trim<sup>144</sup> “used for fuel purposes” down to “used for fuel.” They learn that they are being chatterboxes<sup>145</sup> when they say “the question as to whether” & that they should just say “whether” – a saving of 4 words out of a possible 5.

The professor devotes<sup>146</sup> a special paragraph to the vile<sup>147</sup> expression *the fact that*, a phrase that causes him to quiver<sup>148</sup> with revulsion<sup>149</sup>. The expression, he says, should be “revised out of every sentence in which it occurs.” But a shadow<sup>150</sup> of gloom<sup>151</sup> seems to hang over the page, & you feel that he knows how hopeless his cause is. I suppose I have written *the fact that* a thousand times in the heat of composition, revised it out maybe 500 times in the cool aftermath<sup>152</sup>. To be batting only .500 this late in the season, to fail half the time to connect with this fat pitch, saddens me, for it seems a betrayal of the man who showed me how to swing<sup>153</sup> at it & made the swinging seem worthwhile.

<sup>134</sup>**lapel** [n] 1 of the 2 front parts of the top of a coat or jacket that are joined to the collar & are folded back.

<sup>135</sup>**husky** [a] 1. (of a person of their voice) sounding deep, quiet & rough, sometimes in an attractive way; 2. (*North American English*) with a large, strong body; [n] (*North American English* also **huskie**) a large strong dog with thick hair, used for pulling sledges across snow.

<sup>136</sup>**conspiratorial** [a] 1. connected with, or making you think of, a conspiracy (= a secret plan to do something illegal); 2. (of a person's behavior) suggesting that a secret is being shared.

<sup>137</sup>**memorable** [a] special, good or unusual & therefore worth remembering; easy to remember.

<sup>138</sup>**lash** [v] 1. [intransitive, transitive] to hit somebody/something with great force, SYNONYM: **pound**; 2. [transitive] **lash somebody/something** to hit a person or an animal with a whip, rope, stick, etc., SYNONYM: **beat**.

<sup>139</sup>**elaboration** [n] [uncountable, countable] 1. the act of explaining or describing something in a more detailed way; 2. the process of developing a plan, an idea, etc. & making it complicated or detailed; 3. **elaboration (of something)** (*biology*) the production of a substance or structure from elements or simpler constituents in a natural process.

<sup>140</sup>**noble** [a] 1. belonging to a family of high social rank, SYNONYM: **aristocratic**; 2. having or showing fine personal qualities that people admire, e.g. courage, honesty & care for others; [n] a person who comes from a family of high social rank; a member of the nobility, SYNONYM: **aristocratic**.

<sup>141</sup>**theme** [n] the subject of a talk, piece of writing, exhibition, etc.; an idea that keeps returning in a piece of research or a work of art or literature.

<sup>142</sup>**prolixity** [n] [uncountable] (*formal*) the fact of using too many words & therefore creating a piece of writing, a speech, etc., that is boring.

<sup>143</sup>**pruning** [n] [uncountable] 1. the activity of cutting off some of the branches from a tree, bush, etc. so that it will grow better & stronger; 2. the act of making something smaller by removing parts; the act of cutting out parts of something.

<sup>144</sup>**trim** [v] 1. **trim something** to make something neater, smaller, better, etc., by cutting parts from it; 2. to cut away unnecessary parts from something; 3. [usually passive] **trim something (with something)** to decorate something, especially around its edges.

<sup>145</sup>**chatterbox** [n] (*informal*) a person who talks a lot, especially a child.

<sup>146</sup>**devote** [v] **devote yourself to somebody/something** to give most of your time, energy or attention to somebody/something, SYNONYM: **dedicate**; **devote something to something**: to give an amount of time, attention or resources to something.

<sup>147</sup>**vile** [a] 1. (*informal*) extremely unpleasant or bad, SYNONYM: **disgusting**; 2. (*formal*) morally bad; completely unacceptable, SYNONYM: **wicked**.

<sup>148</sup>**quiver** [v] to shake slightly; to make a slight movement, SYNONYM: **tremble**; [n] 1. an emotion that has an effect on your body; a slight movement in part of your body; 2. a case for carrying arrows.

<sup>149</sup>**revulsion** [n] [uncountable, singular] (*formal*) a strong feeling of horror, SYNONYM: **disgust**, **repugnance**.

<sup>150</sup>**shadow** [n] 1. [countable] the dark area or shape produced by somebody/something coming between light & a surface; 2. [uncountable] (**shadows** [plural]) darkness, especially that produced by somebody/something coming between light & a surface; 3. [singular] the strong (usually bad) influence of somebody/something.

<sup>151</sup>**gloom** [n] 1. [uncountable, singular] a feeling of being sad & without hope, SYNONYM: **depression**; 2. [uncountable] (*literary*) almost total darkness.

<sup>152</sup>**aftermath** [n] [usually singular] the situation that exists as a result of an important (& usually unpleasant) event, especially a war, an accident, etc.

<sup>153</sup>**swing** [v] 1. [intransitive, transitive] to change to make somebody/something change from 1 opinion or mood to another; 2. [intransitive, transitive] to turn or change direction suddenly; to make something do this; 3. [intransitive, transitive] to move backwards or forwards or from side to side while hanging from a fixed point; to make something do this; 4. [intransitive, transitive] to move or make something move with a wide curved movement; [n] a change from 1 opinion or situation to another; the amount by which something changes.

I treasure<sup>154</sup> *The Elements of Style* for its sharp<sup>155</sup> advice, but I treasure it even more for the audacity<sup>156</sup> & self-confidence<sup>157</sup> of its author. Will knew where he stood. He was so sure of where he stood, & made his position so clear & so plausible, that his peculiar<sup>158</sup> stance<sup>159</sup> has continued to invigorate<sup>160</sup> me – &, I am sure, thousands of other ex-students – during the years that have intervened<sup>161</sup> since our 1st encounter<sup>162</sup>. He had a number of likes & dislikes that were almost as whimsical<sup>163</sup> as the choice of a necktie, yet he made them seem utterly<sup>164</sup> convincing. He disliked the word *forceful*<sup>165</sup> & advised us to use *forcible*<sup>166</sup> instead. He felt that the word *clever*<sup>167</sup> was greatly overused: “It is best restricted to ingenuity<sup>168</sup> displayed in small matters.” He despised<sup>169</sup> the expression *student body*, which he termed gruesome<sup>170</sup>, & made a special trip downtown to the *Alumni News* office 1 day to protest<sup>171</sup> the expression & suggest that *studentry* be substituted<sup>172</sup> – a coinage<sup>173</sup> of his own, which he felt was similar to *citizenry*<sup>174</sup>. I am told that the *News* editor was so charmed by the visit, if not by the word, that he ordered the student body buried, never to rise again. *Studentry* has taken its place. It’s not much of an improvement, but it does sound less cadaverous<sup>175</sup>, & it made Will Strunk quite happy.

Some years ago, when the heir<sup>176</sup> to the throne of England was a child, I noticed a headline in the *Times* about Bonnie Prince Charlie: “CHARLES’ TONSILS OOUT.” Immediately Rule 1 leapt to mind.

1. Form the possessive singular of nouns by adding ’s. Follow this rule whatever the final consonant<sup>177</sup>. Thus write, *Charles’s friend*, *Burns’s poems*, *the witch’s malice*<sup>178</sup>.

Clearly, Will Strunk had foreseen<sup>179</sup>, as far back as 1918, the dangerous tonsillectomy<sup>180</sup> of a prince, in which the surgeon removes the tonsils & the *Times* copy desk removes the final *s*. He started his book with it. I commend Rule 1 to the *Times*, & I trust that Charles’s throat, not Charles’ throat, is in fine shape today.

Style rules of this sort are, of course, somewhat a matter of individual preference<sup>181</sup>, & even the established rules of

<sup>154</sup>**treasure** [n] **1.** [uncountable] a collection of valuable things e.g. gold, silver & jewelry; **2.** [countable, usually plural] a highly valued object; **3.** [singular] a person who is much loved or valued; [v] **treasure something** to have or keep something that you love & that is extremely valuable to you, SYNONYM: **cherish**.

<sup>155</sup>**sharp** [a] **1.** [usually before noun] (especially of a change in something) sudden & fast; **2.** [usually before noun] (especially of a difference in something) clear & definite; **3.** (especially of something that can cut or make a hole in something) having a fine edge or point, OPPOSITE: **blunt**; **4.** (of a person or what they say) critical or severe; **5.** (of a physical feeling or an emotion) very strong & sudden, often like being cut or wounded, SYNONYM: **intense**; **6.** changing direction suddenly; **7.** (of people or their minds or eyes) quick to notice or understand things or to react.

<sup>156</sup>**audacity** [n] [uncountable] behavior that is brave but likely to shock or offend people, SYNONYM: **nerve**.

<sup>157</sup>**self-confidence** [n] [uncountable] confidence in yourself & your abilities, SYNONYM: **self-assurance**, **confidence**.

<sup>158</sup>**peculiar** [a] belonging to or connected with 1 particular place, situation, person, etc., & not others.

<sup>159</sup>**stance** [n] the opinions that somebody has about something & expresses publicly, SYNONYM: **position**.

<sup>160</sup>**invigorate** [v] **1.** **invigorate somebody** to make somebody feel healthy & full of energy; **2.** **invigorate something** to make a situation, an organization, etc. efficient & successful.

<sup>161</sup>**intervene** [v] **1.** [intransitive] to become involved in a situation in order to improve it or stop it from getting worse; **2.** [intransitive] to happen in the time between events; **3.** [intransitive] to exist or be found in the space between things; **4.** [intransitive] to happen in a way that delays something or prevents it from happening.

<sup>162</sup>**encounter** [v] **1.** **encounter something** to experience something, especially something unpleasant or difficult, while you are trying to do something else, SYNONYM: **run into something**; **2.** **encounter something/somebody** to discover or experience something, or meet somebody, especially something/somebody new, unusual or unexpected, SYNONYM: **come across somebody/something**; [n] a meeting, especially one that is sudden or unexpected.

<sup>163</sup>**whimsical** [a] unusual & not serious in a way that is either funny or annoying.

<sup>164</sup>**utter** [a] [only before noun] used to emphasize how complete something is, SYNONYM: **total**; [v] **utter something** to make a sound with your voice; to say something.

<sup>165</sup>**forceful** [a] **1.** (of people) expressing opinion firmly & clearly in a way that persuades other people to believe them, SYNONYM: **assertive**; **2.** (of opinions, etc.) expressed firmly & clearly so that other people believe them; **3.** using force; **4.** (of action) strong & effective.

<sup>166</sup>**forcible** [a] [only before noun] involving the use of physical force.

<sup>167</sup>**clever** [a] **1.** (especially British English) quick at learning & understanding things, SYNONYM: **intelligent**; **2.** **clever (at something/doing something)** (especially British English) skillful; **3.** showing intelligence or skill, e.g. in the design of an object, in an idea or somebody’s actions.

<sup>168</sup>**ingenuity** [n] [uncountable] the ability to invent things or solve problems in clever new ways, SYNONYM: **inventiveness**.

<sup>169</sup>**despise** [v] (not used in the progressive tenses) to dislike & have no respect for somebody/something.

<sup>170</sup>**gruesome** [a] very unpleasant & filling you with horror, usually because it is connected with death or injury.

<sup>171</sup>**protest** [n] [uncountable, countable] the expression of strong disagreement with or opposition to something; a statement or an action that shows this.

<sup>172</sup>**substitute** [v] [intransitive, transitive] to take the place of somebody/something else; to use somebody/something instead of somebody/something else; [n] a person or thing that you use or have instead of the usual one.

<sup>173</sup>**coinage** [n] **1.** [uncountable] the coins used in a particular place or at a particular time; coins of a particular type; **2.** [countable, uncountable] a word or phrase that has been invented recently; the process of inventing a word or phrase.

<sup>174</sup>**citizenry** [n] [singular + singular or plural verb] (*formal*) all the citizens of a particular town, country, etc.

<sup>175</sup>**cadaverous** [a] (*literary*) (of a person) extremely pale, thin & looking ill.

<sup>176</sup>**heir** [n] **1.** a person who has the legal right to receive somebody’s property, money or title when that person dies; **2.** a person who is thought to continue the work or a tradition started by somebody else.

<sup>177</sup>**consonant** [n] **1.** (phonetics) a speech sound made by completely or partly stopping the flow of air being breathed out through the mouth; **2.** a letter of the alphabet that represents a consonant sound.

<sup>178</sup>**malice** [n] [uncountable] a desire to harm somebody caused by a feeling of hate.

<sup>179</sup>**foreseen** [v] to know about something before it happens.

<sup>180</sup>**tonsillectomy** [n] (*medical*) a medical operation to remove the tonsils.

<sup>181</sup>**preference** [n] **1.** [countable, usually singular, uncountable] a greater interest in or desire for somebody/something than somebody/something else; **2.** [countable] a thing that is liked better or best.

grammar are open to challenge. Prof. Strunk, although 1 of the most inflexible<sup>182</sup> & choosy<sup>183</sup> of men, was quick to acknowledge<sup>184</sup> the fallacy<sup>185</sup> of inflexibility & the danger of doctrine<sup>186</sup>. “It is an old observation,” he wrote, “that the best writers sometimes disregard<sup>187</sup> the rules of rhetoric<sup>188</sup>. [stop translating here] When they do so, however, the reader will usually find in the sentence some compensating merit, attained at the cost of the violation. Unless he is certain of doing as well, he will probably do best to follow the rules.”

It is encouraging to see how perfectly a book, even a dusty rule book, perpetuates & extends the spirit of a man. Will Strunk loved the clear, the brief, the bold, & his book is clear, brief, bold. Boldness is perhaps its chief distinguishing mark. On p. 26, explaining 1 of his parallels, he says, “The lefthand version gives the impression that the writer is undecided or timid, apparently unable or afraid to choose 1 form of expression & hold to it.” & his original Rule 11 was “Make definite assertions.” That was Will all over. He scorned the vague, the tame, the colorless, the irresolute. He felt it was worse to be irresolute than to be wrong. I remember a day in class when he leaned far forward, in his characteristic pose – the pose of a man about to impart a secret – & croaked, “If you don’t know how to pronounce a word, say it loud! If you don’t know how to pronounce a word, say it loud!” This comical piece of advice struck me as sound at the time, & I still respect it. Why compound ignorance with inaudibility? Why run & hide?

All through *The Elements of Style* one finds evidence of the author’s deep sympathy for the reader. Will felt that the reader was in serious trouble most of the time, floundering in a swamp, & that it was the duty of anyone attempting to write English to drain this swamp quickly & get the reader up on dry ground, or at least to throw a rope. In revising the text, I have tried to hold steadily in mind this belief of his, this concern for the bewildered reader.

In the English classes of today, “the little book” is surrounded by longer, lower textbooks – books with permissive steering & automatic transitions. Perhaps the book has become something of a curiosity. To me, it still seems to maintain its original poise, standing, in a drafty time, erect, resolute, & assured. I still find the Strunkian wisdom a comfort, the Strunkian humor a delight, & the Strunkian attitude forward right-&-wrong a blessing undisguised.” – Strunk Jr. and White, 2019, Introduction (by E. B. White)

## 1.1 Elementary Rules of Usage

This section is devoted to study Strunk Jr. and White, 2019, Chap. 1.

### 1.1.1 Form the possessive singular of nouns by adding ’s

“Follow this rule whatever the final consonant. Thus write *Charles’s friend*, *Burns’s poems*, *the witch’s malice*. Exceptions are the possessive of ancient proper names in *-es* & *-is*, the possessive *Jesus’s*, & such forms as *for conscience’s sake*, *for righteousness’s sake*. But such forms as *Achilles’ heel*, *Moses’ laws*, *Isis’ temple* are commonly replaced by: *the laws of Moses*, *the temple of Isis*. The pronominal possessives *hers*, *its*, *theirs*, *yours*, & *ours* have no apostrophe. Indefinite pronouns, however, use the apostrophe to show possession: *one’s rights*, *somebody else’s umbrella*. A common error is to write *it’s* for *its*, or vice versa. The 1st is a contraction, meaning “it is.” The 2nd is a possessive.

**Example 1.1.** *It’s a wise dog that scratches its own fleas.*”

– Strunk Jr. and White, 2019, Chap. 1, Sect. 1, p. 14

### 1.1.2 In a series of $\geq 3$ terms with a single conjunction, use a comma after each term except the last

“Thus write,

**Example 1.2.** *red, white, & blue; gold, silver, or copper*

*He opened the letter, read it, & made a note of its contents.*

<sup>182</sup>**inflexible** [a] **1.** (*disapproving*) that cannot be changed or made more suitable for a particular situation, SYNONYM: **rigid**; **2.** (*disapproving*) (of people or organizations) unwilling to change their opinions, decision or behavior.

<sup>183</sup>**choosy** [a] (*informal*) careful in choosing; difficult to please, SYNONYM: **fussy**, **picky**.

<sup>184</sup>**acknowledge** [v] **1.** to accept that something is true or exists; **2.** to accept that somebody/something has a particular quality, importance or status, SYNONYM: **recognize**; **3. acknowledge somebody/something** to publicly express thanks for help or inspiration; **4. acknowledge something** to tell somebody that you have received something that they sent to you.

<sup>185</sup>**fallacy** [n] **1.** [countable] a false idea that many people believe is true; **2.** [uncountable, countable] a false way of thinking about something.

<sup>186</sup>**doctrine** [n] **1.** [countable, uncountable] **doctrine (of something)** a belief or principle, or set of beliefs or principles, held by a religion, a political party or a legal system; **2. (Doctrine)** [countable] (US) a statement of government policy, especially foreign policy.

<sup>187</sup>**disregard** [v] **disregard something** to not consider something; to treat something as unimportant, SYNONYM: **ignore**.

<sup>188</sup>**rhetoric** [n] [uncountable] **1.** (*often disapproving*) speech or writing that is intended to influence people, but that is not completely honest or sincere; **2.** the skill of using language in speech or writing in a special way that influences or entertains people.

This comma is often referred to as the “serial” comma. In the names of business firms the last comma is usually omitted. Follow the usage of the individual firm.

**Example 1.3.** *Little, Brown & Company; Donaldson, Lufkin & Jenrette*”

– Strunk Jr. and White, 2019, Chap. 1, Sect. 2, p. 15

### 1.1.3 Enclose parenthetical expressions between commas

**Example 1.4.** *“The best way to see a country, unless you are pressed for time, is to travel on foot.*

This rule is difficult to apply; it is frequently hard to decide whether a single word, e.g. *however*, or a brief phrase is or is not parenthetical. If the interruption to the flow of the sentence is but slight, the commas may be safely omitted. But whether the interruption is slight or considerable, never omit 1 comma & leave the other. There is no defense for such punctuation as

**Example 1.5.** *Marijories husband, Colonel Nelson paid us a visit yesterday.*

*My brother you will be pleased to hear, is now in perfect health.*

Dates usually contain parenthetical words or figures. Punctuate as follows:

**Example 1.6.** *February to July, 1992; April 6, 1985; Wednesday, November 14, 1990*

Note that it is customary to omit the comma in *6 April 1988*. The last form is an excellent way to write a date; the figures are separated by a word & are, for that reason, quickly grasped.

A name or a title in direct address is parenthetical.

**Example 1.7.** *If, Sir, you refuse, I cannot predict what will happen.*

*Well, Susan, this is a fine mess you are in.*

The abbreviations *etc.*, *i.e.*, & *e.g.*, the abbreviations for academic degrees, & titles that follow a name are parenthetical & should be punctuated accordingly.

**Example 1.8.** *Letters, packages, etc., should go here.*

*Horace Fulsome, Ph.D., presided.*

*Rachel Simonds, Attorney*

*The Reverend Harry Lang, S.J.*

No comma, however, should separate a noun from a restrictive term of identification.

**Example 1.9.** *Billy the Kid; The novelist Jane Austen; William the Conqueror; The poet Sappho*

Although *Junior*, with its abbreviation *Jr.*, has commonly been regarded as parenthetical, logic suggests that it is, in fact, restrictive & therefore not in need of a comma, e.g., *James Wright Jr.*

Nonrestrictive relative clauses are parenthetical, as are similar clauses introduced by conjunctions indicating time or place. Commas are therefore needed. A nonrestrictive clause is one that does not serve to identify or define the antecedent noun.

**Example 1.10.** *The audience, which had at 1st been indifferent, became more & more interested.*

*In 1769, when Napoleon was born, Corsica had but recently been acquired by France.*

*Nether Stowey, where Coleridge wrote The Rime of the Ancient Mariner, is a few miles from Bridgewater.*

In these sentences, the clauses introduced by *which*, *when*, & *where* are nonrestrictive; they do not limit or define, they merely add something. In the 1st example, the clause introduced by *which* does not serve to tell which of several possible audiences is meant; the reader presumably knows that already. The clause adds, parenthetically, a statement supplementing that in the main clause. Each of the 3 sentences is a combination of 2 statements that might have been made independently.

**Example 1.11.** *The audience was at 1st indifferent. Later it became more & more interested.*

*Napoleon was born in 1769. At that time Corsica had but recently been acquired by France.*

*Coleridge wrote The Time of the Ancient Mariner at Nether Stowey. Nether Stowey is a few miles from Bridgewater.*

Restrictive clauses, by contrast, are not parenthetical & are not set off by commas. Thus

**Example 1.12.** *People who live in glass houses shouldn't throw stones.*

Here the clause introduced by *who* does serve to tell which people are meant; the sentence, unlike the sentences above, cannot be split into 2 independent statements. The same principle of comma use applies to participial phrases & to appositives.



**Example 1.13.** *People sitting in the rear couldn't hear,* (restrictive)  
*Uncle Bert, being slightly deaf, moved forward,* (non-restrictive)  
*My cousin Bob is a talented harpist,* (restrictive)  
*Our oldest daughter, Mary, sings,* (nonrestrictive)

When the main clause of a sentence is preceded by a phrase or a subordinate clause, use a comma to set off these elements.

**Example 1.14.** *Partly by hard fighting, partly by diplomatic skill, they enlarged their dominions to the east & rose to royal rank with the possession of Sicily."*

– Strunk Jr. and White, 2019, Chap. 1, Sect. 3, pp. 16–17

#### 1.1.4 Place a comma before a conjunction introducing an independent clause

**Example 1.15.** *"The early records of the city have disappeared, & the story of its 1st years can no longer be reconstructed. The situation is perilous, but there is still 1 chance of escape.*

2-part sentences of which the 2nd member is introduced by *as* (in the sense of "because"), *for*, *or*, *nor*, or *while* (in the sense of "& at the same time") likewise require a comma before the conjunction.

If a dependent clause, or an introductory phrase requiring to be set off by a comma, precedes the 2nd independent clause, no comma is needed after the conjunction.

**Example 1.16.** *The situation is perilous, but if we are prepared to act promptly, there is still 1 chance of escape.*

When the subject is the same for both clauses & is expressed only once, a comma is useful if the connective is *but*. When the connective is *and*, the comma should be omitted if the relation between the 2 statements is close or immediate.

**Example 1.17.** *I have heard the arguments, but am still unconvinced.  
 He has had several years' experience & is thoroughly competent."*

– Strunk Jr. and White, 2019, Chap. 1, Sect. 4, p. 18

#### 1.1.5 Do not join independent clauses with a comma

"If 2 or more clauses grammatically complete & not joined by a conjunction are to form a single compound sentence, the proper mark of punctuation is a semicolon.

**Example 1.18.** *Mary Shelley's works are entertaining; they are full of engaging ideas.  
 It is nearly half past 5; we cannot reach town before dark.*

It is, of course, equally correct to write each of these as 2 sentences, replacing the semicolons with periods.

**Example 1.19.** *Mary Shelley's works are entertaining. They are full of engaging ideas.  
 It is nearly half past 5. We cannot reach town before dark.*

If a conjunction is inserted, the proper mark is a comma. (Rule 4.)

**Example 1.20.** *Mary Shelley's works are entertaining, for they are full of engaging ideas.  
 It is nearly half past 5, & we cannot reach town before dark.*

A comparison of the 3 forms given above will show clearly the advantage of the 1st. It is, at least the examples given, better than the 2nd form because it suggests the close relationship between the 2 statements in a way that the 2nd does not attempt, & better than the 3rd because it is briefer & therefore more forcible. Indeed, this simple method of indicating relationship between statements is 1 of the most useful devices of composition. The relationship, as above, is commonly 1 of cause & consequence.

Note that if the 2nd clause is preceded by an adverb, e.g., *accordingly*, *besides*, *then*, *therefore*, or *thus*, & not by a conjunction, the semicolon is still required.

**Example 1.21.** *I had never been in the place before; besides, it was dark as a tomb.*

An exception to the semicolon rule is worth noting here. A comma is preferable when the clauses are very short & alike in form, or when the tone of the sentence is easy & conversational.

**Example 1.22.** *Man proposes, God disposes.  
 The gates swung apart, the bridge fell, the portcullis was drawn up.  
 I hardly knew him, he was so changed.  
 Here today, gone tomorrow."*

– Strunk Jr. and White, 2019, Chap. 1, Sect. 5, p. 19

### 1.1.6 Do not break sentences in 2

“In other words, do not use periods for commas.

**Example 1.23.** *I met them on a Cunard liner many years ago. Coming home from Liverpool to New York.*

*She was an interesting talker. A woman who had traveled all over the world & lived in half a dozen countries.*

In both these examples, the 1st period should be replaced by a comma & the following word begun with a small letter. It is permissible to make an emphatic word or expression serve the purpose of a sentence & to punctuate it accordingly:

**Example 1.24.** *Again & again he called out. No reply.*

The writer must, however, be certain that the emphasis is warranted, lest a clipped sentence seem merely a blunder in syntax or in punctuation. Generally speaking, the place for broken sentences is in dialogue, when a character happens to speak in a clipped or fragmentary way.

Rules 3, 4, 5, & 6 cover the most important principles that govern punctuation. They should be so thoroughly mastered that their application becomes 2nd nature.” – Strunk Jr. and White, 2019, Chap. 1, Sect. 6, p. 20

### 1.1.7 Use a colon after an independent clause to introduce a list of particulars, an appositive, an amplification, or an illustrative quotation

“A colon tells the reader that what follows is closely related to the preceding clause. The colon has more effect than the comma, less power to separate than the semicolon, & more formality than the dash. It usually follows an independent clause & should not separate a verb from its complement or a preposition from its object. The examples in the lefthand column, below, are wrong; they should be rewritten as in the righthand column.

**Example 1.25.** *Your dedicated whittler requires: a knife, a piece of wood, & a back porch.*

→ *Your dedicated whittler requires 3 props: a knife, a piece of wood, & a back porch.*

*Understanding is that penetrating quality of knowledge that grows from: theory, practice, conviction, assertion, error, & humiliation.*

→ *Understanding is that penetrating quality of knowledge that grows from theory, practice, conviction, assertion, error, & humiliation.*

Join 2 independent clauses with a colon if the 2nd interprets or amplifies the 1st.

**Example 1.26.** *But even so, there was a directness & dispatch about animal burial: there was no stopover in the undertaker’s foul parlor, no wreath or spray.*

A colon may introduce a quotation that supports or contributes to the preceding clause.

**Example 1.27.** *The squalor of the streets reminded her of a line from Oscar Wilde: “We are all in the gutter, but some of us are looking at the stars.”*

The colon also has certain functions of form: to follow the salutation of a formal letter, to separate hour from minute in a notation of time, & to separate the title of a work from its subtitle or a Bible chapter from a verse.

**Example 1.28.** *Dear Mr. Montague:*

*departs at 10:48 P.M.*

*Practical Calligraphy: An Introduction to Italic Script*  
*Nehemiah 11:7”*

– Strunk Jr. and White, 2019, Chap. 1, Sect. 7, p. 21

### 1.1.8 Use a dash to set off an abrupt break or interruption & to announce a long appositive or summary

“A dash is a mark of separation stronger than a comma, less formal than a colon, & more relaxed than parentheses.

**Example 1.29.** *His 1st thought on getting out of bed – if he had any thought at all – was to get back in again.*

*The rear axle began to make a noise – a grinding, chattering, teeth-gritting rasp.*

*The increasing reluctance of the sun to rise, the extra nip in the breeze, the patter of shed leaves dropping – all the evidences of fall drifting into winter were clearer each day.*

Use a dash only when a more common mark of punctuation seems inadequate.

**Example 1.30.** *Her father's suspicions proved well-founded – it was not Edward she cared for – it was San Francisco.*  
 ⇨ *Her father's suspicions proved well-founded. It was not Edward she cared for, it was San Francisco.*  
*Violence – the kind you see on television – is not honestly violent – there lies its harm.*  
 ⇨ *Violence, the kind you see on television, is not honestly violent. There lies its harm.”*  
 – Strunk Jr. and White, 2019, Chap. 1, Sect. 8, p. 22

### 1.1.9 The number of the subject determines the number of the verb

“Words that intervene between subject & verb do not affect the number of the verb.

**Example 1.31.** *The bittersweet flavor of youth – its trials, its joys, its adventures, its challenges – are not soon forgotten.*  
 ⇨ *The bittersweet flavor of youth – its trials, its joys, its adventures, its challenges – is not soon forgotten.*

A common blunder is the use of a singular verb form in a relative clause following “1 of ...” or a similar expression when the relative is the subject.

**Example 1.32.** *1 of the ablest scientists who has attacked this problema → 1 of the ablest scientists who have attacked this problem*  
*1 of those people who is never ready on time → 1 of those people who are never ready on time*

Use a singular verb form after *each*, *either*, *everyone*, *everybody*, *neither*, *nobody*, *someone*.

**Example 1.33.** *Everybody thinks he has a unique sense of humor.*  
*Although both clocks strike cheerfully, neither keeps good time.*

With *none*, use the singular verb when the word means “no one” or “not one.”

**Example 1.34.** *None of us are perfect. → None of us is perfect.*

A plural verb is commonly used when *none* suggests more than 1 thing or person.

**Example 1.35.** *None are so fallible as those who are sure they're right.*

A compound subject formed of 2 or more nouns joined by & almost always requires a plural verb.

**Example 1.36.** *The walrus & the carpenter were walking close at hand.*

But certain compounds, often cliches, are so inseparable they are considered a unit & so take a singular verb, as do compound subjects qualified by *each* or *every*.

**Example 1.37.** *The long & the short of it is ...*  
*Bread & butter was all she served.*  
*Give & take is essential to a happy household.*  
*Every window, picture, & mirror was smashed.*

A singular subject remains singular even if other nouns are connected to it by *with*, *as well as*, *in addition to*, *except*, *together with*, & *no less than*.

**Example 1.38.** *His speech as well as his manner is objectionable.*

A linking verb agrees with the number of its subject.

**Example 1.39.** *What is wanted is a few more pairs of hands.*  
*The trouble with truth is its many varieties.*

Some nouns that appear to be plural are usually construed as singular & given a singular verb.

**Example 1.40.** *Politics is an art, not a science.*  
*The Republican Head quarters is on this side of the tracks.*

But

**Example 1.41.** *The general's quarters are across the river.*

In these cases the writer must simply learn the idioms. The content of a book is singular. The contents of a jar may be either singular or plural, depending on what's in the jar – jam or marbles.” – Strunk Jr. and White, 2019, Chap. 1, Sect. 9, pp. 23–24

### 1.1.10 Use the proper case of pronoun

“The personal pronouns, as well as the pronoun *who*, change form as they function as subject or object.

**Example 1.42.** *Will Jane or he be hired, do you think?*

*The culprit, it turned out, was he.*

*We heavy eaters would rather walk than ride.*

*Who knocks?*

*Give this work to whoever looks idle.*

In the last example, *whoever* is the subject of *looks idle*; the object of the preposition *to* is the entire clause *whoever looks idle*. When *who* introduces a subordinate clause, its case depends on its function in that clause.

**Example 1.43.** *Virgil Soames is the candidate whom we think will win.* → *Virgil Soames is the candidate who we think will win.* [*We think he will win.*]

*Virgil Soames is the candidate who we hope to elect.* → *Virgil Soames is the candidate whom we hope to elect.* [*We hope to elect him.*]

A pronoun in a comparison is nominative if it is the subject of a stated or understood verb.

**Example 1.44.** *Sandy writes better than I.* (*Than I write*).

In general, avoid “understood” verbs by supplying them.

**Example 1.45.** *I think Horace admires Jessica more than I.* → *I think Horace admires Jessica more than I do.*

*Polly loves cake more than me.* → *Polly loves cake more than she loves me.*

The objective case is correct in the following examples.

**Example 1.46.** *The ranger offered Shirley & him some advice on campsites.*

*They came to meet the Baldwins & us.*

*Let’s talk it over between us, then, you & me.*

*Whom should I ask?*

*A group of us taxpayers protested.*

*Us* in the last example is in apposition to *taxpayers*, the object of the preposition *of*. The wording, although grammatically defensible, is rarely apt. “A group of us protested as taxpayers.” is better, if not exactly equivalent.

Use the simple personal pronoun as a subject.

**Example 1.47.** *Blake & myself stayed home.* → *Blake & I stayed home.*

*Howard & yourself brought the lunch, I thought.* → *Howard & you brought the lunch, I thought.*

The possession case of pronouns is used to show ownership. It has 2 forms: the adjectival modifier, *your* hat, & the noun form, a hat of *yours*.

**Example 1.48.** *The dog has buried 1 of your gloves & 1 of mine in the flower bed.*

Gerunds usually require the possessive case.

**Example 1.49.** *Mother objected to our driving on the icy roads.*

A present participle as a verbal, on the other hand, takes the objective case.

**Example 1.50.** *They heard him singing in the shower.*

The difference between a verbal participle & a gerund is not always obvious, but not what is really said in each of the following.

**Example 1.51.** *Do you mind me asking a question?*

*Do you mind my asking a question?*

In the 1st sentence, the queried objection is to *me*, as opposed to other members of group, asking a question. In the 2nd example, the issue is whether a question may be asked at all.” – Strunk Jr. and White, 2019, Chap. 1, Sect. 10, pp. 25–26

### 1.1.11 A participial phrase at the beginning of a sentence must refer to the grammatical subject

**Example 1.52.** *Walking slowly down the road, he saw a woman accompanied by 2 children.*

The word *walking* refers to the subject of the sentence, not to the woman. To make it refer to the woman, the writer must recast the sentence.

**Example 1.53.** *He saw a woman, accompanied by 2 children, walking slowly down the road.*

Participial phrases preceded by a conjunction or by a preposition, nouns in apposition, adjectives, & adjective phrases come under the same rule if they begin the sentence.

**Example 1.54.** *On arriving in Chicago, his friends met him at the station. → On arriving in Chicago, he was met at the station by his friends.*

*A soldier of proved valor, they entrusted him with the defense of the city. → A soldier of proved valor, he was entrusted with the defense of the city.*

*Young & inexperienced, the task seemed easy to me. → Young & inexperienced, I thought the task easy.*

*Without a friend to counsel him, the temptation proved irresistible. → Without a friend to counsel him, he found the temptation irresistible.*

Sentences violating Rule 11 are often ludicrous:

**Example 1.55.** *Being in a dilapidated condition, I was able to buy the house very cheap.*

*Wondering irresolutely what to do next, the clock struck 12.” – Strunk Jr. and White, 2019, Chap. 1, Sect. 11, p. 27*

## 1.2 Elementary Principles of Composition

This section is devoted to study Strunk Jr. and White, 2019, Chap. 2.

### 1.2.1 Choose a suitable design & hold to it

“A basic structural design underlies every kind of writing. Writers will in part follow this design, in part deviate from it, according to their skills, their needs, & the unexpected events that accompany the act of composition. Writing, to be effective, must follow closely the thoughts of the writer, but not necessarily in the order in which those thoughts occur. This calls for a scheme of procedure. In some cases, the best design is no design, as with a love letter, which is simply an outpouring, or with a casual essay, which is a ramble. But in most cases, planning must be a deliberate prelude to writing. The 1st principle of composition, therefore, is to foresee or determine the shape of what is to come & pursue that shape.

A sonnet is built on a 14-line frame, each line containing 5 feet. Hence, sonneteers know exactly where they are headed, although they may not know how to get there. Most forms of composition are less clearly defined, more flexible, but all have skeletons to which the writer will bring the flesh & the blood. The more clearly the writer perceives the shape, the better are the chances of success.” – Strunk Jr. and White, 2019, Chap. 2, Sect. 12, p. 29

### 1.2.2 Make the paragraph the unit of composition: 1 paragraph to each topic

“The paragraph is a convenient unit; it serves all forms of literary work. As long as it holds together, a paragraph may be of any length – a single, short sentence or a passage of great duration.

If the subject on which you are writing is of slight extent, or if you intend to treat it briefly, there may be no need to divide it into topics. Thus, a brief description, a brief book review, a brief account of a single incident, a narrative merely outlining an action, the setting forth of a single idea – any 1 of these is best writing in a single paragraph. After the paragraph has been written, examine it to see whether division will improve it.

Ordinarily, however, a subject requires division into topics, each of which should be dealt with in a paragraph. The object of treating each topic in a paragraph by itself, of course, to aid the reader. The beginning of each paragraph is a signal that a new step in the development of the subject has been reached.

As a rule, single sentences should not be written or printed as paragraphs. An exception may be made of sentences of transition, indicating the relation between the parts of an exposition or argument.

In dialogue, each speech, even if only a single word, is usually a paragraph by itself; i.e., a new paragraph begins with each change of speaker. The application of this rule when dialogue & narrative are combined is best learned from examples in well-edited works of fiction. Sometimes a writer, seeking to create an effect of rapid talk or for some other reason, will elect not to set off each speech in a separate paragraph & instead will run speeches together. The common practice, however, & the one that serves best in most instances, is to give each speech a paragraph of its own.

As a rule, begin each paragraph either with a sentence that suggests the topic or with a sentence that helps the transition. If a paragraph forms part of a larger composition, its relation to what precedes, or its function as a part of the whole, may need to be expressed. This can sometimes be done by a mere word or phrase (*again, therefore, for the same reason*) in the 1st sentence. Sometimes, however, it is expedient to get into the topic slowly, by way of a sentence or 2 of introduction or translation.

In narration & description, the paragraph sometimes begins with a concise, comprehensive statement serving to hold together the details that follow.

**Example 1.56.** *The breeze served us admirably.*

*The campaign opened with a series of reverses.*

*The next 10 or 12 pages were filled with a curious set of entries.*

But when this device, or any device, is too often used, it becomes a mannerism. More commonly, the opening sentence simply indicates by its subject the direction the paragraph is to take.

**Example 1.57.** *At length I thought I might return toward the stockade.*

*He picked up the heavy lamp from the table & began to explore.*

*Another flight of steps, & they emerged on the roof.*

In animated narrative, the paragraphs are likely to be short & without any semblance of a topic sentence, the writer rushing headlong, event following event in rapid succession. The break between such paragraphs merely serves the purpose of a rhetorical pause, throwing into prominence some detail of the action.

In general, remember that paragraphing calls for a good eye as well as a logical mind. Enormous blocks of print look formidable to readers, who are often reluctant to tackle them. Therefore, breaking long paragraphs in 2, even if it is not necessary to do so for sense, meaning, or logical development, is often a visual help. But remember, too, that firing off many short paragraphs in quick succession can be distracting. Paragraph breaks used only for show read like the writing of commerce or of display advertising. Moderation & a sense of order should be the main considerations in paragraphing.” – Strunk Jr. and White, 2019, Chap. 2, Sect. 13, pp. 30–31

### 1.2.3 Use the active voice

“The active voice is usually more direct & vigorous than the passive :

**Example 1.58.** *I shall always remember my 1st visit to Boston.*

This is much better than:

**Example 1.59.** *My 1st visit to Boston will always be remembered by me.*

The latter sentence is less direct, less bold, & less concise. If the writer tries to make it more concise by omitting “by me,”: *My 1st visit to Boston will always be remembered*, it becomes indefinite: is it the writer or some undisclosed person or the world at large that will always remember this visit?

This rule does not, of course, mean that the writer should entirely discard the passive voice, which is frequently convenient & sometimes necessary.

**Example 1.60.** *The dramatists of the Restoration are little esteemed today.*

*Modern readers have little esteem for the dramatists of the Restoration.*

The 1st would be the preferred form in a paragraph on the dramatists of the Restoration, the 2nd in a paragraph on the tastes of modern readers. The need to make a particular word the subject of the sentence will often, as in these examples, determine which voice is to be used.

The habitual use of the active voice, however, makes for forcible writing. This is true not only in narrative concerned principally with action but in writing of any kind. Many a tame sentence of description or exposition can be made lively & emphatic by substituting a transitive in the active voice for some such perfunctory expression as *there is* or *could be heard*.

**Example 1.61.** *There were a great number of dead leaves lying on the ground. → Dead leaves covered the ground.*

*At dawn the crowing of a rooster could be heard. → The cock’s crow came with dawn.*

*The reason he left college was that his health became impaired. → Failing health compelled him to leave college.*

*It was not long before she was very sorry that she had said what she had. → She soon repented her words.*

Note, in the examples above, that when a sentence is made stronger, it usually becomes shorter.

Thus, “brevity is a by-product of vigor.” – Strunk Jr. and White, 2019, Chap. 2, Sect. 14, p. 32



### 1.2.4 Put statements in positive form

“Make definite assertions. Avoid tame, colorless, hesitating, noncommittal language. Use the word *not* as a means of denial or in antithesis, never as a means of evasion.

**Example 1.62.** *He was not very often on time. → He usually came late.*

*She did not think that studying Latin was a sensible way to use one’s time. → She thought the study of Latin a waste of time.*

*The Taming of the Shrew is rather weak in spots. Shakespeare does not portray Katharine as a very admirable character, nor does Bianca remain long in memory as an important character in Shakespeare’s works.*

*↪ The women in The Taming of the Shrew are unattractive. Katharine is disagreeable, Bianca insignificant.*

The last example, before correction, is indefinite as well as negative. The corrected version, consequently, is simply a guess at the writer’s intention.

All 3 examples show the weakness inherent in the word *not*. Consciously or unconsciously, the reader is dissatisfied with being told only what is not; the reader wishes to be told what is. Hence, as a rule, it is better to express even a negative in positive form.

**Example 1.63.** *not honest → dishonest; not important → trifling; did not remember → forgot; did not pay any attention to → ignored; → did not have much confidence in → distrusted*

Placing negative & positive in opposition makes for a stronger structure.

**Example 1.64.** *Not charity, but simple justice.*

*Not that I loved Caesar less, but that I loved Rome more.*

*Ask not what your country can do for you – ask what you can do for your country.*<sup>189</sup>

Negative words other than *not* are usually strong.

**Example 1.65.** *Her loveliness I never knew/Until she smiled on me.*

Statements qualified with unnecessary auxiliaries or conditionals sound irresolute.

**Example 1.66.** *If you would let us know the time of your arrival, we would be happy to arrange your transportation from the airport.*

*↪ If you will let us know the time of your arrival, we shall be happy to arrange your transportation from the airport.*

*Applicants can make a good impression by being neat & punctual. → Applicants will make a good impression if they are neat & punctual.*

*Plath may be ranked among those modern poets who died young. → Plath was 1 of those modern poets who died young.*

If your every sentence admits a doubt, your writing will lack authority. Save the auxiliaries *would, should, could, may, might, & can* for situations involving real uncertainty.” – Strunk Jr. and White, 2019, Chap. 2, Sect. 15, pp. 33–34

### 1.2.5 Use definite, specific, concrete language

“Prefer the specific to the general, the definite to the vague, the concrete to the abstract.

**Example 1.67.** *A period of unfavorable weather set in. → It rained every day for a week.*

*He showed satisfaction as he took possession of his well-earned reward. → He grinned as he pocketed the coin.*

If those who have studied the art of writing are in accord on any 1 point, it is this: the surest way to arouse & hold the readers attention is by being specific, definite, & concrete. The greatest writers – Homer, Dante, Shakespeare – are effective largely because they deal in particulars & report the details that matter. Their words call up pictures.

Jean Stafford, to cite a more modern author, demonstrates in her short story “In the Zoo” how prose is made vivid by the use of words that evoke images & sensations:

**Example 1.68.** *... Daisy & I in time found asylum in a small menagerie down by the railroad tracks. It belonged to a gentle alcoholic ne’er-do- well, who did nothing all day long but drink bathtub gin in rickeys & play solitaire & smile to himself & talk to his animals. He had a little, stunted red vixen & a deodorized skunk, a parrot from Tahiti that spoke Parisian French, a weebegone coyote, & 2 capuchin monkeys, so serious & humanized, so small & sad & sweet, & so religious-looking with their tonsured heads that it was impossible not to think their gibberish was really an ordered language with a grammar that somebody some philologist would understand.*

<sup>189</sup> “Đừng hỏi Tổ quốc đã làm gì cho ta mà phải hỏi ta đã làm gì cho Tổ quốc hôm nay” – *Khát Vọng Tuổi Trẻ* (1995), sáng tác: Vũ Hoàng.

Gran knew about our visits to Mr. Murphy & she did not object, for it gave her keen pleasure to excoriate him when we came home. His vice was not a matter of guesswork; it was an established fact that he was half-seas over from dawn till midnight. “With the black Irish,” said Gran, “the taste for drink is taken in with the mother’s milk & is never mastered. Oh, I know all about those promises to join the temperance movement & not to touch another drop. The way to Hell is paved with good intentions.” – Excerpt from “In the Zoo” from *Bad Characters* by Jean Stafford.

If the experiences of Walter Mitty, of Molly Bloom, of Rabbit Angstrom have seemed for the moment real to countless readers, if in reading Faulkner we have almost the sense of inhabiting Yoknapatawpha County during the decline of the South, it is because the details used are definite, the terms concrete. It is not that every detail is given – that would be impossible, as well as to no purpose – but that all the significant details are given, & with such accuracy & vigor that readers, in imagination, can project themselves into the scene.

In exposition & in argument, the writer must likewise never lose hold of the concrete; & even when dealing with general principles, the writer must furnish particular instances of their application.

In his *Philosophy of Style*, Herbert Spencer gives 2 sentences to illustrate how the vague & general can be turned into the vivid & particular:

**Example 1.69.** *In proportion as the manners, customs, & amusements of a nation are cruel & barbarous, the regulations of their penal code will be severe.*

↪ *In proportion as men delight in battles, bullfights, & combats of gladiators, will they punish by hanging, burning, & the rack.*

To show what happens when strong writing is deprived of its vigor, George Orwell once took a passage from the Bible & drained it of its blood. On the left, below, is Orwell’s translation; on the right, the verse from Ecclesiastes (King James Version).

**Example 1.70.** *Objective consideration of contemporary phenomena compels the conclusion that success or failure in competitive activities exhibits no tendency to be commensurate with innate capacity, but that a considerable element of the unpredictable must inevitably be taken into account.*

↪ *I returned, & saw under the sun, that the race is not to the swift, nor the battle to the strong, neither yet bread to the wise, nor yet riches to men of understanding, nor yet favor to men of skill; but time & chance happeneth to them all.”*

– Strunk Jr. and White, 2019, Chap. 2, Sect. 16, pp. 35–36

### 1.2.6 Omit needless words

“Vigorous writing is concise.” A sentence should contain no unnecessary words, a paragraph no unnecessary sentences, for the same reason that a drawing should have no unnecessary lines & a machine no unnecessary parts. This requires not that the writer make all sentences short, or avoid all detail & treat subjects only in outline, but that every word tell.

Many expressions in common use violate this principle.

**Example 1.71.** *the question as to whether* → *whether* (*the question whether*)

*there is no doubt but that* → *no doubt* (*doubtless*)

*used for fuel purposes* → *used for fuel*

*he is a man who* → *he*

*in a hasty manner* → *hastily*

*this is a subject that* → *this subject*

*Her story is a strange one.* → *Her story is strange.*

*the reason why is that* → *because*

*The fact that* is an especially debilitating expression. It should be revised out of every sentence in which it occurs.

**Example 1.72.** *owing to the fact that* → *since* (*because*)

*in spite of the fact that* → *though* (*although*)

*call your attention to the fact that* → *remind you* (*notify you*)

*I was unaware of the fact that* → *I was unaware that* (*did not know*)

*the fact that he had not succeeded* → *his failure*

*the fact that I had arrived* → *my arrival*

See also the words *case*, *character*, *nature* in Chap. IV. *Who is*, *which was*, & the like are often superfluous.

**Example 1.73.** *His cousin, who is a member of the same firm* → *His cousin, a member of the same firm*

*Trafalgar, which was Nelson’s last battle* → *Trafalgar, Nelson’s last battle*



As the active voice is more concise than the passive, & a positive statement more concise than a negative one, many of the examples given under Rules 14 & 15 illustrate this rule as well.

A common way to fall into wordiness is to present a single complex idea, step by step, in a series of sentences that might to advantage be combined into one.

**Example 1.74.** *Macbeth was very ambitious. This led him to wish to become king of Scotland. The witches told him that this wish of his would come true. The king of Scotland at this time was Duncan. Encouraged by his wife, Macbeth murdered Duncan. He was thus enabled to succeed Duncan as king. (51 words)*

↪ *Encouraged by his wife, Macbeth achieved his ambition & realized the prediction of the witches by murdering Duncan & becoming king of Scotland in his place. (26 words)*

– Strunk Jr. and White, 2019, Chap. 2, Sect. 17, pp. 37–38

### 1.2.7 Avoid a succession of loose sentences

“This rule refers especially to loose sentences of a particular type: those consisting of 2 clauses, the 2nd introduced by a conjunction or relative. A writer may err by making sentences too compact & periodic. An occasional loose sentence prevents the style from becoming too formal & gives the reader a certain relief. Consequently, loose sentences are common in easy, unstudied writing. The danger is that there may be too many of them.

An unskilled writer will sometimes construct a whole paragraph of sentences of this kind, using as connectives &, but, &, less frequently, *who*, *which*, *when*, *where*, & *while*, these last in nonrestrictive senses. (See Rule 3.)

**Example 1.75.** *The 3rd concert of the subscription series was given last evening, & a large audience was in attendance. Mr. Edward Appleton was the soloist, & the Boston Symphony Orchestra furnished the instrumental music. The former showed himself to be an artist of the 1st rank, while the latter proved itself fully deserving of its high reputation. The interest aroused by the series has been very gratifying to the Committee, & it is planned to give a similar series annually hereafter. The 4th concert will be given on Tuesday, May 10, when an equally attractive program will be presented.*

Apart from its triteness & emptiness, the paragraph above is bad because of the structure of its sentences, with their mechanical symmetry & singsong. Compare these sentences from the chapter “What I Believe” in E. M. Forster’s *2 Cheers for Democracy*:

**Example 1.76.** *I believe in aristocracy, though – if that is the right word, & if a democrat may use it. Not an aristocracy of power, based upon rank & influence, but an aristocracy of the sensitive, the considerate & the plucky. Its members are to be found in all nations & classes, & all through the ages, & there is a secret understanding between them when they meet. They represent the true human tradition, the 1 permanent victory of our queer race over cruelty & chaos. Thousands of them perish in obscurity, a few are great names. They are sensitive for others as well as for themselves, they are considerate without being fussy, their pluck is not swankiness but the power to endure, & they can take a joke.*

A writer who has written a series of loose sentences should recast enough of them to remove the monotony, replacing them with simple sentences, sentences of 2 clauses joined by a semicolon, periodic sentences of 2 clauses, or sentences (loose or periodic) of 3 clauses – whichever best represent the real relations of the thought.” – Strunk Jr. and White, 2019, Chap. 2, Sect. 18, pp. 39–40

### 1.2.8 Express coordinate ideas in similar form

“This principle, that of parallel construction, requires that expressions similar in content & function be outwardly similar. The likeness of form enables the reader to recognize more readily the likeness of content & function. The familiar Beautitudes exemplify the virtue of parallel construction.

**Example 1.77.** *Blessed are the poor in spirit: for theirs is the kingdom of heaven.*

*Blessed are they that mourn: for they shall be comforted.*

*Blessed are the meek: for they shall inherit the earth.*

*Blessed are they which do hunger & thirst after righteousness: for they shall be filled.*

The unskilled writer often violates this principle, mistakenly believing in the value of constantly varying the form of expression. When repeating a statement to emphasize it, the writer may need to vary its form. Otherwise, the writer should follow the principle of parallel construction.

**Example 1.78.** *Formerly, science was taught by the textbook method, while now the laboratory method is employed.*

↪ *Formerly, science was taught by the textbook method; now it is taught by the laboratory method.*

The lefthand version gives the impression that the writer is undecided or timid, apparently unable or afraid to choose 1 form of expression & hold to it. The right hand version shows that the writer has at least made a choice & abided by it.

By this principle, an article or a preposition applying to all the members of a series must either be used only before the 1st term or else be repeated before each term.

**Example 1.79.** *The French, the Italians, Spanish, & Portuguese → The French, the Italians, the Spanish, & the Portuguese*  
*In spring, summer, or in winter → In spring, summer, or winter (In spring, in summer, or in winter)*

Some words require a particular preposition in certain idiomatic uses. When such words are joined in a compound construction, all the appropriate prepositions must be included, unless they are the same.

**Example 1.80.** *His speech was marked by disagreement & scorn for his opponent's position. → His speech was marked by disagreement with & scorn for his opponent's position.*

Correlative expressions (*both, and; not, but; not only, but also; either, or; 1st, 2nd, 3rd; & the like*) should be followed by the same grammatical construction. Many violations of this rule can be corrected by rearranging the sentence.

**Example 1.81.** *It was both a long ceremony & very tedious. → The ceremony was both long & tedious.*

*A time not for words but action. → A time not for words but for action.*

*Either you must grant his request or incur his ill will. → You must either grant his request or incur his ill will.*

*My objections are, 1st, the injustice of the measure; 2nd, that it is unconstitutional. → My objections are, 1st, that the measure is unjust; 2nd, that it is unconstitutional.*

It may be asked, what if you need to express a rather large number of similar ideas – say, 20? Must you write 20 consecutive sentences of the same pattern? On closer examination, you will probably find that the difficulty is imaginary – that these 20 ideas can be classified in groups, & that you need apply the principle only within each group. Otherwise, it is best to avoid the difficulty by putting statements in the form of a table.” – Strunk Jr. and White, 2019, Chap. 2, Sect. 19, pp. 41–42

### 1.2.9 Keep related words together

“The position of the words in a sentence is the principal means of showing their relationship. Confusion & ambiguity result when words are badly placed. The writer must, therefore, bring together the words & groups of words that are related in thought & keep apart those that are not so related.

**Example 1.82.** *He noticed a large stain in the rug that was right in the center. → He noticed a large stain right in the center of the rug.*

*You can call your mother in London & tell her about George's taking you out to dinner for just 2 dollars. → For just 2 dollars you can call your mother in London & tell her all about George's taking you out to dinner.*

*New York's 1st commercial human-sperm bank opened Friday with semen samples from 18 men frozen in a stainless steel tank. → New York's 1st commercial human-sperm bank opened Friday when semen samples were taken from 18 men. The samples were then frozen & stored in a stainless steel tank.*

In the lefthand version of the 1st example, the reader has no way of knowing whether the stain was in the center of the rug or the rug was in the center of the room. In the lefthand version of the 2nd example, the reader may well wonder which cost 2 dollars – the phone call or the dinner. In the lefthand version of the 3rd example, the reader's heart goes out to those 18 poor fellows frozen in a steel tank.

The subject of a sentence & the principal verb should not, as a rule, be separated by a phrase or clause that can be transferred to the beginning.

**Example 1.83.** *Toni Morrison, in Beloved, writes about characters who have escaped from slavery but are haunted by its heritage. → In Beloved, Toni Morrison writes about characters who have escaped from slavery but are haunted by its heritage.*

*A dog, if you fail to discipline him, becomes a household pest. → Unless disciplined, a dog becomes a household pest.*

Interposing a phrase or a clause, as in the lefthand examples above, interrupts the flow of the main clause. This interruption, however, is not usually bothersome when the flow is checked only by a relative clause or by an expression in apposition. Sometimes, in periodic sentences, the interruption is a deliberate device for creating suspense<sup>190</sup>. (See examples under Rule 22.)

The relative pronoun should come, in most instances, immediately after its antecedent.

<sup>190</sup>**suspense** [n] [uncountable] a feeling of worry or excitement that you have when you feel that something is going to happen, somebody is going to tell you some news, etc.

**Example 1.84.** *There was a stir in the audience that suggested disapproval. → A stir that suggested disapproval swept the audience.*

*He wrote 3 articles about his adventures in Spain, which were published in Harper's Magazine.*

↪ *He published 3 articles in Harper's Magazine about his adventures in Spain.*

*This is a portrait of Benjamin Harrison, who became President in 1889. He was the grandson of William Henry Harrison.*

↪ *This is a portrait of Benjamin Harrison, grandson of William Henry Harrison, who became President in 1889.*

If the antecedent consists of a group of words, the relative comes at the end of the group, unless this would cause ambiguity.

**Example 1.85.** *The Superintendent of the Chicago Division, who*

No ambiguity results from the above. But

**Example 1.86.** *A proposal to amend the Sherman Act, which has been variously judged*

leaves the reader wondering whether it is the proposal or the Act that has been variously judged. The relative clause must be moved forward, to read, "A proposal, which has been variously judged, to amend the Sherman Act . . ." Similarly

**Example 1.87.** *The grandson of William Henry Harrison, who → William Henry Harrison's grandson, Benjamin Harrison, who*

A noun in apposition may come between antecedent & relative, because in such a combination no real ambiguity can arise.

**Example 1.88.** *The Duke of York, his brother, who was regarded with hostility by the Whigs*

Modifiers should come, if possible, next to the words they modify. If several expressions modify the same word, they should be arranged so that no wrong relation is suggested.

**Example 1.89.** *All the members were not present. → Not all the members were present.*

*She only found 2 mistakes. → She found only 2 mistakes.*

*The director said he hoped all members would give generously to the Fund at a meeting of the committee yesterday.*

↪ *At a meeting of the committee yesterday, the director said he hoped all members would give generously to the Fund.*

*Major R. E. Joyce will give a lecture on Tuesday evening in Bailey Hall, to which the public is invited on "My Experiences in Mesopotamia" at 8:00 P.M.*

↪ *On Tuesday evening at 8, Major R. E. Joyce will give a lecture in Bailey Hall on "My Experiences in Mesopotamia." The public is invited.*

Note, in the last lefthand example, how swiftly meaning departs when words are wrongly juxtaposed." – Strunk Jr. and White, 2019, Chap. 2, Sect. 20, pp. 43–45

## 1.2.10 In summaries, keep to 1 tense

"In summarizing the action of a drama, use the present tense. In summarizing a poem, story, or novel, also use the present, though you may use the past if it seems more natural to do so. If the summary is in the present tense, antecedent action should be expressed by the perfect; if in the past, by the past perfect.

**Example 1.90.** *Chance prevents Friar John from delivering Friar Lawrence's letter to Romeo. Meanwhile, owing to her father's arbitrary change of the day set for her wedding, Juliet has been compelled to drink the potion on Tuesday night, with the result that Balthasar informs Romeo of her supposed death before Friar Lawrence learns of the nondelivery of the letter.*

But whichever tense is used in the summary, a past tense in indirect discourse or in indirect question remains unchanged.

**Example 1.91.** *The Friar confesses that it was he who married them.*

Apart from the exceptions noted, the writer should use the same tense throughout. Shifting from 1 tense to another gives the appearance of uncertainty & irresolution.

In presenting the statements or the thought of someone else, as in summarizing an essay or reporting a speech, do not overwork such expressions as "he said," "she stated," "the speaker added," "the speaker then went on to say," "the author also thinks." Indicate clearly at the outset, once for all, that what follows is summary, & then waste no words in repeating the notification.

In notebooks, in newspapers, in handbooks of literature, summaries of 1 kind or another may be indispensable<sup>191</sup>, & for children in primary schools retelling a story in their own words is a useful exercise. But in the criticism or interpretation

<sup>191</sup>indispensable [a] too important to be without, SYNONYM: **essential**.

of literature, be careful to avoid dropping into summary. It may be necessary to devote 1 or 2 sentences to indicating the subject, or the opening situation, of the work being discussed, or to cite numerous details to illustrate its qualities. But you should aim at writing an orderly discussion supported by evidence, not a summary with occasional comment. Similarly, if the scope of the discussion includes a number of works, as a rule it is better not to take them up singly in chronological order but to aim from the beginning at establishing general conclusions.” – Strunk Jr. and White, 2019, Chap. 2, Sect. 21, pp. 46–47

### 1.2.11 Place the emphatic words of a sentence at the end

“The proper place in the sentence for the word or group of words that the writer desires to make most prominent is usually the end.

**Example 1.92.** *Humanity has hardly advanced in fortitude since that time, though it has advanced in many other ways.*

→ *Since that time, humanity has advanced in many ways, but it has hardly advanced in fortitude.*

*This steel is principally used for making razors, because of its hardness.*

→ *Because of its hardness, this steel is used primarily for making razors.*

The word or group of words entitled to this position of prominence is usually the logical predicate – i.e., the *new* element in the sentence, as it is in the 2nd example. The effectiveness of the periodic sentence arises from the prominence it gives to the main statement.

**Example 1.93.** *4 centuries ago, Christopher Columbus, 1 of the Italian mariners whom the decline of their own republics had put at the service of the world & of adventure, seeking for Spain a westward passage to the Indies to offset the achievement of Portuguese discoverers, lighted on America.*

*With these hopes & in this belief I would urge you, laying aside all hindrance, thrusting away all private aims, to devote yourself unswervingly & unflinchingly to the vigorous & successful prosecution of this war.*

The other prominent position in the sentence is the beginning. Any element in the sentence other than the subject becomes emphatic when placed 1st.

**Example 1.94.** *Deceit or treachery she could never forgive.*

*Vast & rude, fretted by the action of nearly 3000 years, the fragments of this architecture may often seem, at 1st sight, like works of nature.*

*Home is the sailor.*

A subject coming 1st in its sentence may be emphatic, but hardly by its position alone. In the sentence

**Example 1.95.** *Great kings worshiped at his shrine*

the emphasis upon *kings* arises largely from its meaning & from the context. To receive special emphasis, the subject of a sentence must take the position of the predicate.

**Example 1.96.** *Through the middle of the valley flowed a winding stream.*

The principle that the proper place for what is to be made most prominent is the end applies equally to the words of a sentence, to the sentences of a paragraph, & to the paragraphs of a composition.” – Strunk Jr. and White, 2019, Chap. 2, Sect. 22, pp. 48–49

## 1.3 A Few Matters of Form

This section is devoted to study Strunk Jr. and White, 2019, Chap. 3.

**Colloquialisms.** “If you use a colloquialism or a slang word or phrase, simply use it; do not draw attention to it by enclosing it in quotation marks. To do so is to put on airs, as though you were inviting the reader to join you in a select society of those who know better.

**Exclamations.** Do not attempt to emphasize simple statements by using a mark of exclamation.

**Example 1.97.** *It was a wonderful show!* → *It was a wonderful show.*

The exclamation mark is to be reserved for use after true exclamations or commands.

**Example 1.98.** *What a wonderful show!*

*Halt!*

**Headings.** If a manuscript is to be submitted for publication, leave plenty of space at the top of p. 1. The editor will need this space to write directions to the compositor. Place the heading, or title, at least a 4th of the way down the page. Leave a blank line, or its equivalent in space, after the heading. On succeeding pages, begin near the top, but not so near as to give a crowded appearance. Omit the period after a title or heading. A question mark or an exclamation point may be used if the heading calls for it.

**Hyphen.** When 2 or more words are combined to form a compound adjective, a hyphen is usually required.

**Example 1.99.** *He belonged to the leisure class & enjoyed leisure-class pursuits.*

*She entered her boat in the round-the-island race.*

Do not use a hyphen between words that can better be written as 1 word: *water-fowl*, *waterfowl*. Common sense will aid you in the decision, but a dictionary is more reliable. The steady evolution of the language seems to favor union: 2 words eventually become 1, usually after a period of hyphenation.

**Example 1.100.** *bed chamber* → *bed-chamber* → *bedchamber*; *wild life* → *wild-life* → *wildlife*; *bell boy* → *bell-boy* → *bellboy*

The hyphen can play tricks on the unwary<sup>192</sup>, as it did in Chattanooga when 2 newspapers merged – the *News* & the *Free Press*. Someone introduced a hyphen into the merger, & the paper become *The Chattanooga News-Free Press*, which sounds as though the paper were news-free, or devoid<sup>193</sup> of news. Obviously, we ask too much of a hyphen when we ask it to cast its spell over words it does not adjoin.

**Margins.** Keep righthand & lefthand margins roughly the same width. Exception: If a great deal of annotating or editing is anticipated, the lefthand margin should be roomy enough to accommodate this work.

**Numerals.** Do not spell out dates or other serial numbers. Write them in figures or in Roman notation, as appropriate.

**Example 1.101.** *August 9, 1988; Part XII; Rule 3; 352d Infantry*

Exception: When they occur in dialogue, most dates & numbers are best spelled out.

**Example 1.102.** *“I arrived home on August 9th.”; “In the year 1990, I turned 21.” “Read Chap. 12.”*

**Parentheses.** A sentence containing an expression in parentheses is punctuated outside the last mark of parenthesis exactly as if the parenthetical expression were absent. The expression within the marks is punctuated as if it stood by itself, except that the final stop is omitted unless it is a question mark or an exclamation point.

**Example 1.103.** *I went to her house yesterday (my 3rd attempt to see her), but she had left town.*

*He declares (& why should we doubt his good faith?) that he is now certain of success.*

(When a wholly detached expression or sentence is parenthesized, the final stop comes before the last mark of parenthesis.)

**Quotations.** Formal quotations cited as documentary evidence are introduced by a colon & enclosed in quotation marks.

**Example 1.104.** *The United States Coast Pilot has this to say of the place: “Bracy Cove, 0.5 mile eastward of Bear Island, is exposed to southeast winds, has a rocky & uneven bottom, & is unfit for anchorage.”*

A quotation grammatically in apposition or the direct object of a verb is preceded by a comma & enclosed in quotation marks.

**Example 1.105.** *I am reminded of the advice of my neighbor, “Never worry about your heart till it stops beating.”*

*Mark Twain says, “A classic is something that everybody wants to have read & nobody wants to read.”*

When a quotation is followed by an attributive phrase, the comma is enclosed within the quotation marks.

**Example 1.106.** *“I can’t attend,” she said.*

Typographical usage dictates that the comma be inside the marks, though logically it often seems not to belong there.

**Example 1.107.** *“The Fish,” “Poetry,” & “The Monkeys” are in Marianne Moore’s Selected Poems.*

<sup>192</sup>**unwary** [a] 1. [only before noun] not aware of the possible dangers or problems of a situation & therefore likely to be harmed in some way;  
2. **the unwary** [n] [plural] people who are unwary.

<sup>193</sup>**devoid** [a] **devoid of something** completely lacking in something.



When quotations of an entire line, or more, of either verse or prose are to be distinguished typographically from text matter, as are the quotations in this book, begin on a fresh line & indent. Quotation marks should not be used unless they appear in the original, as in dialogue.

**Example 1.108.** *Worldworth's enthusiasm for the French Revolution was at 1st unbounded:*

*Bliss was it in that dawn to be alive,  
But to be young was very heaven!*

Quotations introduced by *that* are indirect discourse & not enclosed in quotation marks.

**Example 1.109.** *Keats declares that beauty is truth, truth beauty.*

*Dickinson states that a coffin is a small domain.*

Proverbial expressions & familiar phrases of literary origin require no quotation marks.

**Example 1.110.** *These are the times that try men's souls.*

*He lives far from the madding crowd.*

**References.** In scholarly work requiring exact references, abbreviate titles that occur frequently, giving the full forms in an alphabetical list at the end. As a general practice, give the reference in parentheses or in footnotes, not in the body of the sentence. Omit the words *act*, *scene*, *line*, *book*, *volume*, *page*, except when referring to only 1 of them. Punctuate as indicated below.

**Example 1.111.** *in the 2nd scene of the 3rd act* → *in III.ii* (Better still, simply insert *III.ii* in parentheses at the proper place in the sentence.)

*After the killing of Polonius, Hamlet is placed under guard (IV.ii.14)*

*2 Samuel i: 17–27*

*Othello II.iii. 264–267, III.iii. 155–161*

**Syllabication.** When a word must be divided at the end of a line, consult a dictionary to learn the syllables between which division should be made. The student will do well to examine the syllable division in a number of pages of any carefully printed book.

**Titles.** For the titles of literary works, scholarly usage prefers italics with capitalized initials. The usage of editors & publishers varies, some using italics with capitalized initials, others using Roman with capitalized initials & with or without quotation marks. Use italics (indicated in manuscript by underscoring) except in writing for a periodical that follows a different practice. Omit initial *A* or *The* from titles when you place the possessive before them.

**Example 1.112.** *A Tale of 2 Cities*; Dickens's *Tale of 2 Cities*.

*The Age of Innocence*; Wharton's *Age of Innocence*."

– Strunk Jr. and White, 2019, Chap. 3, pp. 50–53

## 1.4 Words & Expressions Commonly Misused

This section is devoted to study Strunk Jr. and White, 2019, Chap. 4.

"Many of the words & expressions listed here are not so much bad English as bad style, the common places of careless writing. As illustrated under *Feature*, the proper correction is likely to be not the replacement of 1 word or set of words by another but the replacement of vague generality by definite statement.

The shape of our language is not rigid; in questions of usage we have no lawgiver whose word is final. Students whose curiosity is aroused by the interpretations that follow, or whose doubts are raised, will wish to pursue their investigations further. Books useful in such pursuits are *Merriam Webster's Collegiate Dictionary*, 10th Edition; *The American Heritage Dictionary of the English Language*, 3rd Edition; *Webster's 3rd New International Dictionary*; *The New Fowler's Modern English Usage*, 3rd Edition, edited by R. W. Burchfield; *Modern American Usage: A Guide* by Wilson Follett & Erik Wensberg; & *The Careful Writer* by Theodore M. Bernstein.

1. **Aggravate. Irritate.** The 1st means "to add to" an already troublesome or vexing matter or condition. The 2nd means "to vex" or "to annoy" or "to chafe."
2. **All right.** Idiomatic in familiar speech as a detached phrase in the sense "Agreed," or "Go ahead," or "O.K." Properly written as 2 words – *all right*.

3. **Allude.** Do not confuse with *elude*. You *allude* to a book; you *elude* a pursuer. Note, too, that *allude* is not synonymous with *refer*. An allusion is an indirect mention, a reference is a specific one.
4. **Allusion.** Easily confused with *illusion*. The 1st means “an indirect reference”; the 2nd means “an unreal image” or “a false impression.”
5. **Alternate. Alternative.** The words are not always interchangeable as nouns or adjectives. The 1st means every other one in a series; the 2nd, 1 of 2 possibilities. As the other one of a series of 2, an *alternate* may stand for “a substitute,” but an *alternative*, although used in a similar sense, connotes a matter of choice that is never present with *alternate*.

**Example 1.113.** *As the flooded road left them no alternative, they took the alternate route.*

6. **Among. Between.** When  $\geq 2$  things or persons are involved, *among* is usually called for: “The money was divided among the 4 players.” When, however,  $\geq 2$  are involved but each is considered individually, *between* is preferred: “an agreement between the 6 heirs.”
7. **And/or.** A device, or shortcut, that damages a sentence & often leads to confusion or ambiguity.

**Example 1.114.** *1st of all, would an honor system successfully cut down on the amount of stealing &/or cheating?*  
 $\hookrightarrow$  *1st of all, would an honor system reduce the incidence of stealing or cheating or both?*

8. **Anticipate.** Use *expect* in the sense of simple expectation.

**Example 1.115.** *I anticipated that he would look older.  $\rightarrow$  I expected that he would look older.*  
*My brother anticipated the upturn in the market.  $\rightarrow$  My brother expected the upturn in the market.*

In the 2nd example, the word *anticipated* is ambiguous. It could mean simply that the brother believed the upturn would occur, or it could mean that he acted in advance of the expected upturn – by buying stock, perhaps.

9. **Anybody.** In the sense of “any person,” not to be written as 2 words. *Any body* means “any corpse,” or “any human form,” or “any group.” The rule holds equally for *everybody*, *nobody*, & *somebody*.
10. **Anyone.** In the sense of “anybody,” written as 1 word. *Any one* means “any single person” or “any single thing.”
11. **As good or better than.** Expressions of this type should be corrected by rearranging the sentences.

**Example 1.116.** *My opinion is as good or better than his.  $\rightarrow$  My opinion is as good as his, or better (if not better).*

12. **As to whether.** *Whether* is sufficient.
13. **As yet.** *Yet* nearly always is as good, if not better.

**Example 1.117.** *No agreement has been reached as yet.  $\rightarrow$  No agreement has yet been reached.*

The chief exception is at the beginning of a sentence, where *yet* means something different.

**Example 1.118.** *Yet (or despite everything) he has not succeeded.*  
*As yet (or so far) he has not succeeded.*

14. **Being.** Not appropriate after *regard* ... *as*.

**Example 1.119.** *He is regarded as being the best dancer in the club.  $\rightarrow$  He is regarded as the best dancer in the club.*

15. **But.** Unnecessary after *doubt* & *help*.

**Example 1.120.** *I have no doubt but that  $\rightarrow$  I have no doubt that.*  
*He could not help but see that.  $\rightarrow$  He could not help seeing that.*

The too-frequent use of *but* as a conjunction leads to the fault discussed under Rule 18. A loose sentence formed with *but* can usually be converted into a periodic sentence formed with *although*.

Particularly awkward is one *but* closely following another, thus making a contrast to a contrast, or a reservation to a reservation. This is easily corrected by rearrangement.

**Example 1.121.** *Our country has vast resources but seemed almost wholly unprepared for war. But within a year it had created an army of 4 million.*

↔ *Our country seemed almost wholly unprepared for war, but it had vast resources. Within a year it had created an army of 4 million.*

16. **Can.** Means “am (is, are) able.” Not to be used as a substitute for *may*.

17. **Care less.** The dismissive “I couldn’t care less” is often used with the shortened “not” mistakenly (& mysteriously) omitted: “I could care less.” The error destroys the meaning of the sentence & is careless indeed.

18. **Case.** Often unnecessary.

**Example 1.122.** *In many cases, the rooms lacked air conditioning. → Many of the rooms lacked air conditioning. It has rarely been the case that any mistake has been made. → Few mistakes have been made.*

19. **Certainly.** Used indiscriminately<sup>194</sup> by some speakers, much as others use *very*, in an attempt to intensify any & every statement. A mannerism of this kind, bad in speech, is even worse in writing.

20. **Character.** Often simply redundant, used from a mere habit of wordiness.

**Example 1.123.** *acts of a hostile character → hostile acts*

21. **Claim.** [v] With object-noun, means “lay claim to.” May be used with a dependent clause if this sense is clearly intended: “She claimed that she was the sole heir.” (But even here *claimed to be* would be better.) Not to be used as a substitute for *declare*, *maintain*, or *charge*.

**Example 1.124.** *He claimed he knew know. → He declared he knew how.*

22. **Clever.** Note that the word means 1 thing when applied to people, another when applied to horses. A clever horse is a good-natured one, not an ingenious one.

23. **Compare.** To *compare to* is to point out or imply resemblances between objects regarded as essentially of a different order; to *compare with* is mainly to point out differences between objects regarded as essentially of the same order. Thus, life has been *compared to* a pilgrimage, *to* a drama, *to* a battle; Congress may be *compared with* the British Parliament. Paris has been *compared to* ancient Athens; it may be *compared with* modern London.

24. **Comprise.** Literally, “embrace”: A zoo comprises mammals, reptiles, & birds (because it “embraces,” or “includes,” them). But animals do not comprise (“embrace”) a zoo – they constitute a zoo.

25. **Consider.** Not followed by *as* when it means “believe to be.”

**Example 1.125.** *I consider him as competent. → I consider him competent.*

When *considered* means “examined” or “discussed,” it is followed by *as*:

**Example 1.126.** *The lecturer considered Eisenhower 1st as soldier & 2nd as administrator.*

26. **Contact.** As a transitive verb, the word is vague & self-important. Do not *contact* people; get in touch with them, look them up, phone them, find them, or meet them.

27. **Cope.** An intransitive verb used with *with*. In formal writing, one doesn’t “cope,” one “copes with” something or somebody.

**Example 1.127.** *I knew they’d cope. (jocular<sup>195</sup>) → I knew they would cope with the situation.*

28. **Currently.** In the sense of *now* with a verb in the present tense, *currently* is usually redundant; emphasis is better achieved through a more precise reference to time.

**Example 1.128.** *We are currently reviewing your application. → We are at this moment reviewing your application.*

<sup>194</sup>**indiscriminately** [adv] **1.** without thinking about what the result of your actions may be, especially when this causes people to be harmed; **2.** without careful judgment.

<sup>195</sup>**jocular** [a] (*formal*) **1.** humorous; **2.** (of a person) enjoying making people laugh, SYNONYM: **jolly**.



29. **Data.** Like *strata*, *phenomena*, & *media*, *data* is a plural & is best used with a plural verb. The word, however, is slowly gaining acceptance as a singular.

**Example 1.129.** *The data is misleading.* → *These data are misleading.*

30. **Different than.** Here logic supports established usage: 1 thing differs *from* another, hence, *different from*. Or, *other than*, *unlike*.

31. **Disinterested.** Means “impartial.” Do not confuse it with *uninterested*, which means “not interested in.”

**Example 1.130.** *Let a disinterested person judge our dispute, (an impartial person)*

*This man is obviously uninterested in our dispute, (couldn't care less)*

32. **Divided into.** Not to be misused for *composed of*. The time is sometimes difficult to draw; doubtless plays are divided into acts, but poems are composed of stanzas. An apple, halved, is divided into sections, but an apple is composed of seeds, flesh, & skin.

33. **Due to.** Loosely used for *through*, *because of*, or *owing to*, in adverbial phrases.

**Example 1.131.** *He lost the 1st game due to carelessness.* → *He lost the 1st game because of carelessness.*

In correct use, synonymous with *attributable to*: “The accident was due to bad weather”; “losses due to preventable fires.”

34. **Each & every one.** Pitchman's jargon<sup>196</sup>. Avoid, except in dialogue.

**Example 1.132.** *It should be a lesson to each & every one of us.* → *It should be a lesson to every one of us (to us all).*

35. **Effect.** As a noun, means “result”; as a verb, means “to bring about,” “to accomplish” (not to be confused with *affect*, which means “to influence”).

As a noun, often loosely used in perfunctory writing about fashions, music, painting, & other arts: “a Southwestern effect”; “effects in pale green”; “very delicate effects”; “subtle effects”; “a charming effect was produced.” The writer who has a definite meaning to express will not take refuge in such vagueness.

36. **Enormity.** Use only in the sense of “monstrous wickedness.” Misleading, if not wrong, when used to express bigness.

37. **Enthuse.** An annoying verb growing out of the noun *enthusiasm*. Not recommended.

**Example 1.133.** *She was enthused about her new car.* → *She was enthusiastic about her new car.*

*She enthused about her new car.* → *She talked enthusiastically (expressed enthusiasm) about her new car.*

38. **Etc.** Literally, “& other things”; somethings loosely used to mean “& other persons.” The phrase is equivalent to *& the erst*, *& so forth*, & hence is not to be used if 1 of these would be insufficient – i.e., if the reader would be left in doubt as to any important particulars. Least open to objection when it represents the last terms of a list already given almost in full, or immaterial words at the end of a quotation.

At the end of a list introduced by *such as*, *for example*, or any similar expression, *etc.* is incorrect. In formal writing, *etc.* is a misfit. An item important enough to call for *etc.* is probably important enough to be named.

39. **Fact.** Use this word only of matters capable of direct verification, not of matters of judgment. That a particular event happened on a given date & that lead melts at a certain temperature are facts. But such conclusions as that Napoleon was the greatest of modern generals or that the climate of California is delightful, however defensible they may be, are not properly called facts.

40. **Facility.** Why must jails, hospitals, & schools suddenly become “facilities”?

**Example 1.134.** *Parents complained bitterly about the fire hazard in the wooden facility.*

↔ *Parents complained bitterly about the fire hazard in the wooden schoolhouse.*

*He has been appointed warden of the new facility.* → *He has been appointed warden of the new prison.*

<sup>196</sup>**jargon** [n] [uncountable] (*often disapproving*) words or expressions that are used by a particular profession or group of people, & are difficult for others to understand.

41. **Factor.** A hackneyed<sup>197</sup> word; the expressions of which it is a part can usually be replaced by something more direct & idiomatic.

**Example 1.135.** *Her superior training was the great factor in her winning the match. → She won the match by being better trained.*

*Air power is becoming an increasingly important factor in deciding battles. → Air power is playing a larger & larger part in deciding battles.*

42. **Farther. Further.** The 2 words are commonly interchanged, but there is a distinction worth observing: *farther* serves best as a distance word, *further* as a time or quantity word. You chase a ball *farther* than the other fellow; you pursue a subject *further*.

43. **Feature.** Another hackneyed word; like *factor*, it usually adds nothing to the sentence in which it occurs.

**Example 1.136.** *A feature of the entertainment especially worthy of mention was the singing of Allison Jones.*

↪ *(Better use the same number of words to tell what Allison Jones sang & how she sang it.)*

As a verb, in the sense of “offer as a special attraction,” it is to be avoided.

44. **Finalize.** A pompous<sup>198</sup>, ambiguous verb. (See Chap. V, Reminder 21.)
45. **Fix.** Colloquial in America for *arrange*, *prepare*, *mend*. The usage is well established. But bear in mind that this verb is from *figere*: “to make firm,” “to place definitely.” These are the preferred meanings of the word.
46. **Flammable.** [Pause at p. 60, move to Chap. 5]

– Strunk Jr. and White, 2019, Chap. 4, pp. 54–73

## 1.5 An Approach to Style (With a List of Reminders)

This section is devoted to study Strunk Jr. and White, 2019, Chap. 5.

“Up to this point, the book has been concerned with what is correct, or acceptable, in the use of English. In this final chapter, we approach style in its broader meaning: style in the sense of what is distinguished & distinguishing. Here we leave solid ground. Who can confidently say what ignites a certain combination of words, causing them to explode in the mind? Who knows why certain notes in music are capable of stirring the listener deeply, though the same notes slightly rearranged are impotent<sup>199</sup>? These are high mysteries, & this chapter is a mystery story, thinly disguised<sup>200</sup>. There is no satisfactory explanation of style, no infallible guide to good writing, no assurance that a person who thinks clearly will be able to write clearly, no key that unlocks the door, no inflexible rule by which writers may shape their course. Writers will often find themselves steering by stars that are disturbingly in motion.

The preceding chapters contain instruction drawn from established English usage; this one contains advice drawn from a writer’s experience of writing. Since the book is a rule book, these cautionary remarks, these subtly dangerous hints, are presented in the form of rules, but they are, in essence, mere gentle reminders: they state what most of us know & at times forget.

Style is an increment<sup>201</sup> in writing. When we speak of Fitzgerald’s style, we don’t mean his command of the relative pronoun, we mean the sound his words make on paper. All writers, by the way they use the language, reveal something of their spirits, their habits, their capacities, & their biases<sup>202</sup>.

This is inevitable as well as enjoyable.	All writing is communication;
--	-------------------------------

creative writing is communication through revelation – it is the Self escaping into the open.	No writer long remains incognito.
---	-----------------------------------

<sup>197</sup> **hackneyed** [a] used too often & therefore boring, SYNONYM: clichéd.

<sup>198</sup> **pompous** [a] (*disapproving*) showing that you think you are more important than other people, especially by using long & formal words, SYNONYM: **pretentious**.

<sup>199</sup> **impotent** [a] **1.** having no power to change things or to influence a situation, SYNONYM: **powerless**; **2.** (of a man) unable to achieve an erection & therefore unable to have full sex.

<sup>200</sup> **disguise** [v] **1.** to hide the true nature of something so that it cannot be recognized, SYNONYM: conceal; **2.** disguise somebody/yourself (as somebody/something) to change your appearance so that people cannot recognize you; [n] [countable, uncountable] a thing that you wear or use to change your appearance so that people do not recognize you.

<sup>201</sup> **increment** [n] **1.** an increase or addition, especially 1 of a series; **2.** a regular increase in salary.

<sup>202</sup> **bias** [n] **1.** [uncountable, countable] the fact that the results of research or an experiment are not accurate because a particular factor has not been considered when collecting the information; **2.** [uncountable, countable, usually singular] a strong feeling in favor of or against 1 group of people, or 1 side in an argument, in a way that influences your decisions in an unfair way; **3.** [countable, usually singular] an interest in 1 area or subject more than others; [v] **1.** **bias something** to have an effect on the results of research or an experiment so that they do not show the real situation; **2.** **bias somebody/something** to influence somebody’s opinions or decisions, sometimes in an unfair way.

If you doubt that style is something of a mystery, try rewriting a familiar sentence & see what happens. Any much-quoted sentence will do. Suppose we take “These are the times that try men’s souls.” Here we have 8 short, easy words, forming a simple declarative sentence. The sentence contains no flashy ingredient such as “Damn the torpedoes<sup>203</sup>!” & the words, as you see, are ordinary. Yet in that arrangement, they have shown great durability<sup>204</sup>; the sentence is into its 3rd century. Now compare a few variations:

**Example 1.137.** *Times like these try men’s souls.*

*How trying it is to live in these times!*

*These are trying times for men’s souls.*

*Soulwise, these are trying times.*

It seems unlikely that Thomas Paine could have made his sentiment<sup>205</sup> stick if he had couched it in any of these forms. But why not? No fault of grammar can be detected in them, & in every case the meaning is clear. Each version is correct, & each, for some reason that we can’t readily put our finger on, is marked for oblivion<sup>206</sup>. We could, of course, talk about “rhythm<sup>207</sup>” & “cadence<sup>208</sup>,” but the talk would be vague & unconvincing<sup>209</sup>. We could declare *soulwise* to be a silly word, inappropriate to the occasion; but even that won’t do – it does not answer the main question. Are we even sure *soulwise* is silly? If *otherwise* is a serviceable<sup>210</sup> word, what’s the matter with *soulwise*?

Here is another sentence, this one by a later Tom. It is not a famous sentence, although its author (Thomas Wolfe) is well known. “Quick are the mouths of earth, & quick the teeth that fed upon this loveliness.” The sentence would not take a prize for clarity, & rhetorically it is at the opposite pole from “These are the times.” Try it in a different form, without the inversions:

**Example 1.138.** *The mouths of earth are quick, & the teeth that fed upon this loveliness are quick, too.*

The author’s meaning is still intact, but not his overpowering emotion. What was poetical & sensuous has become prosy & wooden; instead of the secret sounds of beauty, we are left with the simple crunch of mastication. (Whether Mr. Wolfe was guilty of overwriting is, of course, another question – one that is not pertinent here.)

With some writers, style not only reveals the spirit of the man but reveals his identity, as surely as would his fingerprints. Here, following, are 2 brief passages from the works of 2 American novelists. The subject in each case is languor<sup>211</sup>. In both, the words used are ordinary, & there is nothing eccentric about the construction.

**Example 1.139.** *He did not still feel weak, he was merely luxuriating in that supremely gutful lassitude of convalescence in which time, hurry, doing, did not exist, the accumulating seconds & minutes & hours to which in its well state the body is slave both waking & sleeping, now reversed & time now the lip-server & mendicant to the body’s pleasure instead of the body thrall to time’s headlong course.*

*Manuel drank his brandy. He felt sleepy himself. It was too hot to go out into the town. Besides there was nothing to do. He wanted to see Zurito. He would go to sleep while he waited.*

Anyone acquainted with Faulkner & Hemingway will have recognized them in these passages & perceived which was which. How different are their languors!

Or take 2 American poets, stopping at evening. One stops by woods, the other by laughing flesh.

**Example 1.140.** *My little horse must think it queer*

*To stop without a farmhouse near*

*Between the woods & frozen lake*

*The darkest evening of the year.*

**Example 1.141.** *I have perceived that to be with those I like is enough,*

*To stop in company with the rest at evening is enough,*

*To be surrounded by beautiful, curious, breathing,*

*laughing flesh is enough . . .*

<sup>203</sup>**torpedo** [n] a long, narrow bomb that is fired under the water from a ship or submarine & that explodes when it hits a ship, etc.

<sup>204</sup>**durability** [n] [uncountable] the quality of being able to last for a long time without breaking or getting weaker.

<sup>205</sup>**sentiment** [n] **1.** [countable, uncountable] a feeling or an opinion; **2.** [uncountable] (*sometimes disapproving*) feelings of romantic love, sadness, etc. which may be too strong or not appropriate.

<sup>206</sup>**oblivion** [n] [uncountable] **1.** a state in which you are not aware of what is happening around you, usually because you are unconscious or asleep; **2.** the state in which somebody/something has been forgotten & is no longer famous or important, SYNONYM: **obscurity**; **3.** a state in which something has been completely destroyed.

<sup>207</sup>**rhythm** [n] **1.** [countable] **rhythm (of something)** a regular pattern of changes or events; **2.** [countable, uncountable] a strong regular repeated pattern of sounds or movements.

<sup>208</sup>**cadence** [n] **1.** (*formal*) the rise & fall of the voice in speaking; **2.** the end of a musical phrase.

<sup>209</sup>**unconvincing** [a] not seeming true or real; not making you believe that something is true, OPPOSITE: **convincing**.

<sup>210</sup>**serviceable** [a] of good enough quality to be used.

<sup>211</sup>**languor** [n] [uncountable, singular] (*literary*) the pleasant state of feeling lazy & without energy.

Because of the characteristic styles, there is little question about identity here, & if the situations were reversed, with Whitman stopping by woods & Frost by laughing flesh (not 1 of his regularly scheduled stops), the reader would know who was who.

Young writers often suppose that style is a garnish<sup>212</sup> for the meat of prose, a sauce by which a dull dish is made palatable<sup>213</sup>. Style has no such separate entity; it is nondetachable, unfilterable. The beginner should approach style warily, realizing that it is an expression of self, & should turn resolutely away from all devices that are popularly believed to indicate style – all mannerisms, tricks, adornments<sup>214</sup>. The approach to style is by way of plainness, simplicity, orderliness, sincerity.

Writing is, for most, laborious & slow. The mind travels faster than the pen; consequently, writing becomes a question of learning to make occasional wing shots, bringing down the bird of thought as it flashes by. A writer is a gunner, sometimes waiting in the blind for something to come in, sometimes roaming the countryside hoping to scare something up. Like other gunners, the writer must cultivate patience, working many covers to bring down 1 partridge<sup>215</sup>. Here, following, are some suggestions & cautionary hints that may help the beginner find the way to a satisfactory style.” – Strunk Jr. and White, 2019, Chap. 5, pp. 75–77

### 1.5.1 Place yourself in the background

“Write in a way that draws the reader’s attention to the sense & substance of the writing, rather than to the mood & temper of the author. If the writing is solid & good, the mood & temper of the writer will eventually be revealed & not at the expense of the work. Therefore, the 1st piece of advice is this: to achieve style, begin by affecting none – i.e., place yourself in the background. A careful & honest writer does not need to worry about style. As you become proficient in the use of language, your style will emerge, because you yourself will emerge, & when this happens you will find it increasingly easy to break through the barriers that separate you from other minds, other hearts – which is, of course, the purpose of writing, as well as its principal reward. Fortunately, the act of composition, or creation, disciplines the mind; writing is 1 way to go about thinking, & the practice & habit of writing not only drain the mind but supply it, too.” – Strunk Jr. and White, 2019, Chap. 5, Sect. 1, p. 78

### 1.5.2 Write in a way that comes naturally

“Write in a way that comes easily & naturally to you, using words & phrases that come readily to hand. But do not assume that because you have acted naturally your product is without law.

The use of language begins with imitation. The infant imitates the sounds made by its parents; the child imitates 1st the spoken language, then the stuff of books. The imitative life continues long after the writer is secure in the language, for it is almost impossible to avoid imitating what one admires. Never imitate consciously, but do not worry about being an imitator; take pains instead to admire what is good. Then when you write in a way that comes naturally, you will echo the halloos that bear repeating.” – Strunk Jr. and White, 2019, Chap. 5, Sect. 2, p. 79

### 1.5.3 Work from a suitable design

“Before beginning to compose something, gauge the nature & extent of the enterprise & work from a suitable design. (See Chap. II, Rule 12.) Design informs even the simplest structure, whether of brick & steel or of prose. You raise a pup tent from 1 sort of vision, a cathedral<sup>216</sup> from another. This does not mean that you must sit with a blueprint always in front of you, merely that you had best anticipate what you are getting into. To compose a laundry list, you can work directly from the pile of soiled garments, ticking them off 1 by 1. But to write a biography, you will need at least a rough scheme; you cannot plunge in blindly & start ticking off fact after fact about your subject, lest you miss the forest for the trees & there be no end to your labors.

Sometimes, of course, impulse & emotion are more compelling than design. If you are deeply troubled & are composing a letter appealing for mercy or for love, you had best not attempt to organize your emotions; the prose will have a better chance if the emotions are left in disarray – which you’ll probably have to do anyway, since feelings do not usually lend themselves to rearrangement. But even the kind of writing that is essentially adventurous & impetuous will on examination be found to have a secret plan: Columbus didn’t just sail, he sailed west, & the New World took shape from this simple &, we now think, sensible design.” – Strunk Jr. and White, 2019, Chap. 5, Sect. 3, p. 80

<sup>212</sup>**garnish** [v] **garnish something (with something)** to decorate a dish of food with a small amount of another food; [n] [countable, uncountable] a small amount of food that is used to decorate a larger dish of food.

<sup>213</sup>**palatable** [a] **1.** (of food or drink) having a pleasant or acceptable taste; **2. palatable (to somebody)** pleasant or acceptable to somebody, OPPOSITE: **unpalatable**.

<sup>214</sup>**adornment** [n] **1.** [countable] something that you wear to make yourself look more attractive; something used to decorate a place or an object; **2.** [uncountable] the action of making something/somebody look more attractive by decorating it or them with something.

<sup>215</sup>**partridge** [n] [countable, uncountable] a brown bird with a round body & a short tail, that people hunt for sport or food; the meat of this bird.

<sup>216</sup>**cathedral** [n] the main church of a district, under the care of a bishop (= a priest of high rank).

### 1.5.4 Write with nouns & verbs

“Write with nouns & verbs, not with adjectives & adverbs. The adjective hasn’t been built that can pull a weak or inaccurate noun out of a tight place. This is not to disparage adjectives & adverbs; they are indispensable parts of speech. Occasionally they surprise us with their power, as in

**Example 1.142.** *Up the airy mountain,  
Down the rushy glen,  
We daren’t go a-hunting  
For fear of little men . . .*

The nouns *mountain* & *glen* are accurate enough, but had the mountain not become airy, the glen rushy, William Ailingham might never have got off the ground with his poem. In general, however, it is nouns & verbs, not their assistants, that give good writing its toughness & color.” – Strunk Jr. and White, 2019, Chap. 5, Sect. 4, p. 81

### 1.5.5 Revise & rewrite

“Revising is part of writing. Few writers are so expert that they can produce what they are after on the 1st try. Quite often you will discover, on examining the completed work, that there are serious flaws in the arrangement of the material, calling for transpositions. When this is the case, a word processor can save you time & labor as you rearrange the manuscript. You can select material on your screen & move it to a more appropriate spot, or, if you cannot find the right spot, you can move the material to the end of the manuscript until you decide whether to delete it. Some writers find that working with a printed copy of the manuscript helps them to visualize the process of change; others prefer to revise entirely on screen. Above all, do not be afraid to experiment with what you have written. Save both the original & the revised versions; you can always use the computer to restore the manuscript to its original condition, should that course seem best. Remember, it is no sign of weakness or defeat that your manuscript ends up in need of major surgery. This is a common occurrence in all writing, & among the best writers.” – Strunk Jr. and White, 2019, Chap. 5, Sect. 5, p. 82

### 1.5.6 Do not overwrite

“Rich, ornate<sup>217</sup> prose is hard to digest, generally unwholesome, & sometimes nauseating. If the sickly-sweet word, the overblown phrase are your natural form of expression, as is sometimes the case, you will have to compensate for it by a show of vigor, & by writing something as meritorious as the Song of Songs, which is Solomon’s.

When writing with a computer, you must guard against wordiness. The click & flow of a word processor can be seductive<sup>218</sup>, & you may find yourself adding a few unnecessary words or even a whole passage just to experience the pleasure of running your fingers over the keyboard & watching your words appear on the screen. It is always a good idea to reread your writing later & ruthlessly delete the excess.” – Strunk Jr. and White, 2019, Chap. 5, Sect. 6, p. 83

### 1.5.7 Do not overstate

“When you overstate, readers will be instantly on guard, & everything that has preceded your overstatement as well as everything that follows it will be suspect in their minds because they have lost confidence in your judgment on your poise. Overstatement is 1 of the common faults. A single overstatement, wherever or however it occurs, diminishes the whole, & a single carefree superlative has the power to destroy, for readers, the object of your enthusiasm.” – Strunk Jr. and White, 2019, Chap. 5, Sect. 7, p. 84

### 1.5.8 Avoid the use of qualifiers

“*Rather, very, little, pretty* – these are the leeches that infest the pond of prose, sucking the blood of words. The constant use of the adjective *little* (except to indicate size) is particularly debilitating; we should all try to do a little better, we should all be very watchful of this rule, for it is a rather important one, & we are pretty sure to violate it now & then.” – Strunk Jr. and White, 2019, Chap. 5, Sect. 8, p. 85

<sup>217</sup>ornate [a] covered with a lot of decoration, especially when this involves very small or complicated designs.

<sup>218</sup>seductive [a] 1. sexually attractive; 2. attractive in a way that makes you want to have or do something, SYNONYM: **tempting**.



### 1.5.9 Do not affect a breezy manner

“The volume of writing is enormous<sup>219</sup>, these days, & much of it has a short of windiness<sup>220</sup> about it, almost as though the author were in a state of euphoria<sup>221</sup>. “Spontaneous<sup>222</sup> me,” sang Whitman, &, &, in his innocence<sup>223</sup>, let loose the hordes of uninspired scribblers who would 1 day confuse spontaneity with genius.

The breezy<sup>224 225</sup> style is often the work of an egocentric<sup>226</sup>, the person who imagines that everything that comes to mind is of general interest & that uninhibited prose creates high spirits & carries the day. Open any alumni<sup>227</sup> magazine, turn to the class notes, & you are quite likely to encounter old Spontaneous Me at work – an aging collegian who writes something like this:

**Example 1.143.** *Well, guys, here I am again dishing the dirt about your disorderly classmates, after passing a weekend in the Big Apple trying to catch the Columbia hoops tilt & then a cab-ride from hell through the West Side casbah. & speaking of news, howzabout tossing a few primo items this way?*

This is an extreme example, but the same wind blows, at lesser velocities, across vast expanses of journalistic prose. The author in this case has managed in 2 sentences to commit most of the unpardonable sins: he obviously has nothing to say, he is showing off & directing the attention of the reader to himself, he is using slang with neither provocation nor ingenuity, he adopts a patronizing air by throwing in the word *primo*, he is humorless (though full of fun), dull, & empty. He has not done his work. Compare his opening remarks with the following – a plunge directly into the news:

**Example 1.144.** *Clyde Crawford, who stroked the varsity shell in 1958, is swinging an oar again after a lapse of 40 years. Clyde resigned last spring as executive sales manager of the Indiana Flotex Company & is now a gondolier in Venice.*

This, although conventional<sup>228</sup>, is compact<sup>229</sup>, informative<sup>230</sup>, unpretentious<sup>231</sup>. The writer has dug up an item of news & presented it in a straightforward manner. What the 1st writer tried to accomplish by cutting rhetorical capers<sup>232</sup> & by breeziness<sup>233</sup>, the 2nd writer managed to achieve by good reporting, by keeping a tight rein<sup>234</sup> on his material, & by staying out of the act.” – Strunk Jr. and White, 2019, Chap. 5, Sect. 9, pp. 86–87

### 1.5.10 Use orthodox spelling

“In ordinary composition, use orthodox spelling. Do not write *nite* for *night*, *thru* for *through*, *pleez* for *please*, unless you plan to introduce a complete system of simplified spelling & are prepared to take the consequences.

In the original edition of *The Elements of Style*, there was a chapter on spelling. In it, the author had this to say:

*The spelling of English words is not fixed & invariable<sup>235</sup>, nor does it depend on any other authority<sup>236</sup> than general statement. At the present day there is practically<sup>237</sup> unanimous<sup>238</sup> agreement as to the spelling of most*

<sup>219</sup>**enormous** [a] extremely large, SYNONYM: **huge, immense**.

<sup>220</sup>**windy** [a] **1.** (of weather, etc.) with a lot of wind; **2.** (of a place) getting a lot of wind; **3.** (*informal, disapproving*) (of speech) involving speaking for longer than necessary & in a way that is complicated & not clear.

<sup>221</sup>**euphoria** [n] [uncountable] an extremely strong feeling of happiness & excitement that usually lasts only a short time.

<sup>222</sup>**spontaneous** [a] **1.** happening naturally, without being made to happen; **2.** not planned but done because you suddenly want to do it.

<sup>223</sup>**innocence** [n] [uncountable] **1.** the fact of not being guilty of a crime, etc., OPPOSITE: **guilt**; **2.** lack of knowledge & experience of the world, especially of evil or unpleasant things.

<sup>224</sup>**breezy** [a] **1.** with the wind blowing quite strongly; **2.** having or showing a cheerful & relaxed manner.

<sup>225</sup>“Easy breezy” – Windranger, DotA 2.

<sup>226</sup>**egocentric** [a] thinking only about yourself & not about what other people need or want, SYNONYM: **selfish**.

<sup>227</sup>**alumni** [n] [plural] (*especially North American English*) the former male & female students of a school, college or university.

<sup>228</sup>**conventional** [a] **1.** [usually before noun] based on what is generally believed; following the way something is usually done; **2.** (*often disapproving*) tending to follow what is done or considered acceptable by society in general; normal & ordinary, & perhaps not very interesting, OPPOSITE: **unconventional**; **3.** [usually before noun] (especially of weapons) not nuclear; **4.** (of literature, art or the theater) using a traditional style or method.

<sup>229</sup>**compact** [a] **1.** closely & firmly packed together; **2.** smaller than is usual for things of the same kind; **3.** using or filling only a small amount of space; **4.** (of speech or writing) giving the information that is important using few words or symbols.

<sup>230</sup>**informative** [a] giving useful information.

<sup>231</sup>**unpretentious** [a] (*approving*) not trying to appear more special, intelligent, important, etc. than you really are/it really it, OPPOSITE: **pretentious**.

<sup>232</sup>**caper** [n] **1.** [usually plural] the small green flower bud of a Mediterranean bush, preserved in vinegar & used in preparing sauces & other dishes; **2.** (*informal*) an activity, especially one that is illegal or dangerous; **3.** a humorous film that contains a lot of action; **4.** a short jumping or dancing movement; [v] [intransitive] (*formal*) (+ **adv./prep.**) to run or jump around in a happy & excited way.

<sup>233</sup>**breeziness** [n] [uncountable] a cheerful & relaxed way of behaving.

<sup>234</sup>**rein** [n] (**the reins**) [plural] **rein (of something)** the state of being in control or the leader of something.

<sup>235</sup>**invariable** [a] always the same; never changing, SYNONYM: **unchanging**.

<sup>236</sup>**authority** [n] **1.** [uncountable] the power to give orders to people or to say how things should be done; **2.** [uncountable] official permission or the right to do something; **3.** [countable] an organization that has the power to make decisions or that has a particular area of responsibility in a country or region; **4.** [uncountable] the power to influence people because they respect your knowledge or official position; **5.** [countable] **authority (on something)** a person with special knowledge, SYNONYM: **specialist**.

<sup>237</sup>**practically** [adv] **1.** almost; very nearly, SYNONYM: **virtually**; **2.** in a realistic or sensible way; in real situations.

<sup>238</sup>**unanimous** [a] **1.** if a decision or an opinion is **unanimous**, it is agreed or shared by everyone in a group; **2.** **unanimous (in something)** if a group of people are **unanimous**, they all agree about something.

words . . . At any given moment, however, a relatively small number of words may be spelled in more than 1 way. Gradually, as a rule, 1 of these forms comes to be generally preferred, & the less customary form comes to look obsolete & is discarded. From time to time new forms, mostly simplifications, are introduced by innovators, & either win their place or die of neglect.

The practical objection to unaccepted & oversimplified spellings is the disfavor with which they are received by the reader. They distract his attention & exhaust his patience. He reads the form though automatically, without thought of its needless complexity; he reads the abbreviation *tho* & mentally supplies the missing letters, at the cost of a fraction of his attention. The writer has defeated his own purpose.

The language manages somehow to keep pace with events. A word that has taken hold in our century is *thru-way*; it was born of necessity & is apparently here to stay. In combination with *way*, *thru* is more serviceable than *through*; it is a high-speed word for readers who are going 65. *Throughway* would be too long to fit on a road sign, too slow to serve the speeding eye. It is conceivable that because of our thruways, *through* will eventually become *thru* – after many more thousands of miles of travel.” – Strunk Jr. and White, 2019, Chap. 5, Sect. 10, p. 88

### 1.5.11 Do not explain too much

“It is seldom advisable to tell all. Be sparing, for instance, in the use of adverbs after “he said,” “she replied,” & the like: “he said consolingly”; “she replied grumbly.” Let the conversation itself disclose the speaker’s manner or condition. Dialogue heavily weighted with adverbs after the attributive verb is cluttery<sup>239 240</sup> & annoying. Inexperienced writers not only overwork their adverbs but load their attributives with explanatory verbs: “he consoled,” “she congratulated.” They do this, apparently, in the belief that the word *said* is always in need of support, or because they have been told to do it by experts in the art of bad writing.” – Strunk Jr. and White, 2019, Chap. 5, Sect. 11, p. 89

### 1.5.12 Do not construct awkward adverbs

“Adverbs are easy to build. Take an adjective or a participle, add *-ly*, & behold<sup>241</sup>! you have an adverb. But you’d probably be better off without it. Do not write *tangledly*. The word itself is a tangle. Do not even write *tiredly*. Nobody says *tangledly* & not many people say *tiredly*. Words that are not used orally<sup>242</sup> are seldom the ones to put on paper.

**Example 1.145.** *He climbed tiredly to bed.* → *He climbed wearily<sup>243</sup> to bed.*

*The lamp cord lay tangledly beneath her chair.* → *The lamp cord lay in tangles beneath her chair.*

Do not dress words up by adding *-ly* to them, as though putting a hat on a horse.

**Example 1.146.** *overly* → *over*; *muchly* → *much*; *thusly* → *thus*”

– Strunk Jr. and White, 2019, Chap. 5, Sect. 12, p. 90

### 1.5.13 Make sure the reader knows who is speaking

“Dialogue is a total loss unless you indicate who the speaker is. In long dialogue passages containing no attributives, the reader may become lost & be compelled to go back & reread in order to puzzle the thing out. Obscurity is an imposition on the reader, to say nothing of its damage to the work.

In dialogue, make sure that your attributives do not awkwardly interrupt a spoken sentence. Place them where the break would come naturally in speech – i.e., where the speaker would pause for emphasis, or take a breath. The best test for locating an attributive is to speak the sentence aloud.

**Example 1.147.** “Now, my boy, we shall see,” he said, “how well you have learned your lesson.” → “Now, my boy,” he said, “we shall see how well you have learned your lesson.”

“What’s more, they would never,” she added, “consent to the plan.” → “What’s more,” she added, “they would never consent to the plan.””

– Strunk Jr. and White, 2019, Chap. 5, Sect. 13, p. 91

<sup>239</sup>**clutter** [v] **clutter something (up) (with something/somebody)** to fill a place or area with too many things, so that it is untidy; [n] [uncountable, singular] (*disapproving*) a lot of things in an untidy state, especially things that are not necessary or are not being used; a lack of order, SYNONYM: **mess**.

<sup>240</sup>**cluttered** [a] **cluttered (up) (with somebody/something)** covered with, or full of, a lot of things or people, in a way that is untidy, OPPOSITE: **uncluttered**.

<sup>241</sup>**behold** [v] (*old use or literary*) **behold somebody/something** to look at or see somebody/something.

<sup>242</sup>**oral** [a] **1.** [usually before noun] spoken rather than writing, OPPOSITE: **written**; **2.** [only before noun] connected with the mouth.

<sup>243</sup>**wearily** [adv] (*formal*) **1.** in a way that shows somebody is very tired; **2.** in a way that shows somebody is annoyed & bored because they have had to do something, hear something, explain something, etc. many times.

### 1.5.14 Avoid fancy words

“Avoid the elaborate, the pretentious, the coy, & the cute. Do not be tempted by a 20-dollar word when there is a 10-center handy, ready & able. Anglo-Saxon is a livelier tongue than Latin, so use Anglo-Saxon words. In this, as in so many matters pertaining to style, one’s ear must be one’s guide: *gut* is lustier noun than *intestine*, but the 2 words are not interchangeable, because *gut* is often inappropriate, being too coarse for the context. Never call a stomach a tummy without good reason.

If you admire fancy words, if every sky is *beauteous*, every blonde *curvaceous*, everyone intelligent child prodigious, if you are tickled by *discombobulate*, you will have a bad time with Reminder 14. What is wrong, you ask, with *beauteous*? No one knows, for sure. There is nothing wrong, really, with any word – all are good, but some are better than others. A matter of ear, a matter of reading the books that sharpen the ear.

The line between the fancy & the plain, between the atrocious<sup>244</sup> & the felicitous<sup>245</sup>, is sometimes alarmingly<sup>246</sup> fine. The opening phrase of the Gettysburg address is close to the line, at least by our standards today, & Mr. Lincoln, knowingly or unknowingly, was flirting with disaster when he wrote “4 score & 7 years ago.” The President could have got into his sentence with plain “87” – a saving of 2 words & less of a strain on the listeners’ powers of multiplication. But Lincoln’s ear must have told him to go ahead with 4 score & 7. By doing so, he achieved cadence<sup>247</sup> while skirting the edge of fanciness. Suppose he had blundered over the line & written, “In the year of our Lord seventeen hundred & seventy-six.” His speech would have sustained<sup>248</sup> a heavy blow. Or suppose he had settle for “87.” In that case he would have got into his introductory sentence too quickly; the timing would have been bad.

The question of ear is vital.<sup>249</sup> Only the writer whose ear is reliable is in a position to use bad grammar deliberately; this writer knows for sure when a colloquialism<sup>250</sup> is better formal phrasing & is able to sustain the work at a level of good taste. So cock<sup>251</sup> your ear. Years ago, students were warned not to end a sentence with a preposition; time, of course, has softened that rigid decree<sup>252</sup>. Not only is the preposition acceptable at the end, sometimes it is more effective in that spot than anywhere else. “A claw hammer, not an ax, was the tool he murdered her with.” This is preferable to “A claw hammer, not an ax, was the tool with which he murdered her.” Why? Because it sounds more violent, more like murder.

A matter of ear.

And would you write “The worst tennis player around here is I” or “The worst tennis player around here is me”? The 1st is good grammar, the 2nd is good judgment – although the *me* might not do in all contexts.

The split infinitive is another trick of rhetoric in which the ear must be quicker than the handbook. Some infinitives seem to improve on being split, just as a stick of round stovewood does. “I cannot bring myself to really like the fellow.” The sentence is relaxed, the meaning is clear, the violation is harmless & scarcely perceptible<sup>253</sup>. Put the other way, the sentence becomes stiff, needlessly formal. A matter of ear.

There are times when the ear not only guides us through difficult situations but also saves us from minor or major embarrassments of prose. The ear, e.g., must decide when to omit *that* from a sentence, when to retain it. “She knew she could do it” is preferable to “She knew that she could do it” – simpler & just as clear. But in many cases the *that* is needed. “He felt that his big nose, which was sunburned, made him look ridiculous.” Omit the *that* & you have “He felt his big nose . . .” – Strunk Jr. and White, 2019, Chap. 5, Sect. 14, pp. 92–93

<sup>244</sup>**atrocious** [a] 1. very bad or unpleasant, SYNONYM: **terrible**; 2. very cruel & making you feel shocked.

<sup>245</sup>**felicitous** [a] (*formal or literary*) chosen well; very suitable; giving a good result, SYNONYM: **apt**, **happy**.

<sup>246</sup>**alarming** [a] causing worry & fear.

<sup>247</sup>**cadence** [n] 1. (*formal*) the rises & fall of the voice in speaking; 2. the end of a musical phrase.

<sup>248</sup>**sustain** [v] 1. **sustain somebody/something** to provide enough of what somebody/something needs in order to live or exist; 2. to make something continue for some time without becoming less, SYNONYM: **maintain**; 3. **sustain something** (*formal*) to experience something bad, SYNONYM: **suffer**; 4. **sustain something** to provide evidence to support an opinion, a theory, etc., SYNONYM: **uphold**; 5. **sustain something** (*law*) to decide that a claim, etc. is valid, SYNONYM: **uphold**.

<sup>249</sup>**vital** [a] 1. necessary or essential in order for something to succeed or exist; 2. [only before noun] connected with or necessary for staying alive.

<sup>250</sup>**colloquialism** [n] a word or phrase that is used in conversation but not in formal speech or writing.

<sup>251</sup>**cock** [n] 1. (*British English*) (also **rooster** *North American English, British English*) [countable] an adult male chicken; 2. [countable] (especially in compounds) a male of any other bird; 3. [countable] (taboo, slang) a penis; 4. [countable] (also *stopcock*) a tap that controls the flow of liquid or gas through a pipe; 5. [singular] (*British English, old-fashioned, slang*) used as a friendly form of address between men.

<sup>252</sup>**decree** [n] 1. [countable, uncountable] an official order from a ruler or government that becomes the law; 2. [countable] a decision that is made in court; [v] to decide, judge or order something officially.

<sup>253</sup>**perceptible** [a] 1. great enough to be able to be noticed, SYNONYM: **noticeable**; 2. that can be noticed or felt with the senses.



### 1.5.15 Do not use dialect unless your ear is good

“Do not attempt to use dialect<sup>254</sup> unless you are a devoted student of the tongue<sup>255</sup> you hope to reproduce<sup>256</sup>. If you use dialect, be consistent. The reader will become impatient or confused upon finding 2 or more versions of the same word or expression. In dialect it is necessary to spell phonetically, or at least ingeniously, to capture unusual inflections. Take, e.g., the word *once*. If often appears in dialect writing as *oncet*, but *oncet* looks as though it should be pronounced “onset.” A better spelling would be *wunst*. But if you write it *oncet* once, write it that way throughout. The best dialect writers, by & large, are economical<sup>257</sup> of their talents; they use the minimum, not the maximum, of deviation<sup>258</sup> from the norm, thus sparing their readers as well as convincing them.” – Strunk Jr. and White, 2019, Chap. 5, Sect. 15, p. 94

### 1.5.16 Be clear

“Clarity is not the prize in writing, nor is it always the principal mark of a good style. There are occasions when obscurity<sup>259</sup> serves a literary yearning<sup>260</sup>, if not a literary purpose, & there are writers whose mien<sup>261</sup> is more overcast<sup>262</sup> than clear. But since writing is communication, clarity can only be a virtue. & although there is no substitute for merit in writing, clarity comes closest to being one. Even to a writer who is being intentionally obscure or wild of tongue we can say, “Be obscure clearly! Be wild of tongue in a way we can understand!” Even to writers of market letters, telling us (but not telling us) which securities are promising, we can say, “Be cagey plainly! be elliptical in a straightforward fashion!”

Clarity, clarity, clarity. When you become hopelessly mired in a sentence, it is best to start fresh; do not try to fight your way through against the terrible odds of syntax. Usually what is wrong is that the construction has become too involved at some point; the sentence needs to be broken apart & replaced by 2 or more shorter sentences.

Muddiness is not merely a disturber of prose, it is also a destroyer of life, of hope: death on the highway caused by a badly worded road sign, heartbreak among lovers caused by a misplaced phrase in a well-intentioned letter, anguish of a traveler expecting to be met at a railroad station & not being met because of a slipshod telegram. Think of the tragedies that are rooted in ambiguity, & be clear! When you say something, make sure you have said it. The chances of your having said it are only fair.” – Strunk Jr. and White, 2019, Chap. 5, Sect. 16, p. 95

### 1.5.17 Do not inject opinion

“Unless there is a good reason for its being there, do not inject<sup>263</sup> opinion into a piece of writing. We all have opinions about almost everything, & the temptation to toss them in is great. To air one’s views gratuitously<sup>264</sup>, however, is to imply that the demand for them is brisk, which may not be the case, & which, in any event, may not be relevant to the discussion. Opinions scattered indiscriminately about leave the mark of egotism<sup>265</sup> on a work. Similarly, to air one’s views at an improper time may be in bad taste. If you have received a letter inviting you to speak at the dedication of a new cat hospital, & you hate cats, your reply, declining the invitation, does not necessarily have to cover the full range of your emotions. You must make it clear that you will not attend, but you do not have to let fly at cats. The writer of the letter asked a civil question; attack cats, then, only if you can do so with good humor, good taste, & in such a way that your answer will be courteous<sup>266</sup> as well as responsive. Since you are out of sympathy with cats, you may quite properly give this as a reason for not appearing at the dedicatory ceremonies of a cat hospital. But bear in mind that your opinion of cats was not sought, only your services as a speaker. Try to keep things straight.” – Strunk Jr. and White, 2019, Chap. 5, Sect. 17, p. 96

<sup>254</sup>**dialect** [n] [countable, uncountable] the form of a language that is spoken in 1 area with grammar, words & pronunciation that may be different from other forms of the same language.

<sup>255</sup>**tongue** [n] **1.** the soft part in the mouth that moves around, used for tasting, swallowing, speaking, etc.; **2.** (*formal* or *literary*) a language.

<sup>256</sup>**reproduce** [v] **1.** [transitive] **reproduce something** to produce something again; to make something happen again in the same way; **2.** [transitive] **reproduce something** to make a copy of a picture, piece of text, etc.; to include a copy of a picture, etc.; **3.** [intransitive, transitive] (of people, animals, plants, etc.) to produce young.

<sup>257</sup>**economical** [a] **1.** providing good service or value in relation to the amount of time or money spent; **2.** using no more of something than is necessary.

<sup>258</sup>**deviation** [n] **1.** [uncountable, countable] **deviation (from something)** a difference from what is expected or usual; **2.** [countable] **deviation (from something)** (*statistics*) the amount by which a single measurement is different from a fixed value such as the mean; **3.** [uncountable] **deviation (from something)** behavior that is different from what most people consider normal or acceptable.

<sup>259</sup>**obscurity** [n] **1.** [uncountable] the state in which somebody/something is not well known or has been forgotten; **2.** [uncountable, countable, usually plural] **obscurity (of something)** the quality of being difficult to understand; something that is difficult to understand.

<sup>260</sup>**yearning** [n] [countable, uncountable] (*formal*) a strong & emotional desire, SYNONYM: **longing**.

<sup>261</sup>**mien** [n] [singular] (*formal* or *literary*) a person’s appearance or manner that shows how they are feeling.

<sup>262</sup>**overcast** [a] covered with clouds; not bright.

<sup>263</sup>**inject** [v] **1.** [transitive, intransitive] to put a drug or another substance into a person’s or an animal’s body using a syringe; **2.** [transitive] to put a liquid into something using a syringe or similar equipment; **3.** [transitive] **inject something (into something)** to add a particular quality to something; **4.** [transitive] **inject something (into something)** to give money to an organization or a project so that it can function.

<sup>264</sup>**gratuitously** [adv] (*disapproving*) without any good reason or purpose, in a way that may have harmful effects, SYNONYM: **unnecessarily**.

<sup>265</sup>**egoism** [n] (also **egotism**) [uncountable] (*disapproving*) the fact of thinking that you are better or more important than anyone else.

<sup>266</sup>**courteous** [a] polite, especially in a way that shows respect, OPPOSITE: **discourteous**.

### 1.5.18 Use figures of speech sparingly

“The simile<sup>267</sup> is a common device & a useful one, but similes coming in rapid fire, one right on top of another, are more distracting than illuminating. Readers need time to catch their breath; they can’t be expected to compare everything with something else, & no relief in sight.

When you use metaphor<sup>268</sup>, do not mix it up. I.e., don’t start by calling something a swordfish<sup>269</sup> & end by calling it an hourglass<sup>270</sup>.” – Strunk Jr. and White, 2019, Chap. 5, Sect. 18, p. 97

### 1.5.19 Do not take shortcuts at the cost of clarity

“Do not use initials for the names of organizations or movements unless you are certain the initials will be readily understood. Write things out. Not everyone knows that MADD means Mothers Against Drunk Driving, & even if everyone did, there are babies being born every minute who will someday encounter the name for the 1st time. They deserve to see the words, not simply the initials. A good rule is to start your article by writing out names in full, & then, later, when you readers have got their bearings, to shorten them.

Many shortcuts are self-defeating<sup>271</sup>; they waste the reader’s time instead of conserving it. There are all sorts of rhetorical stratagems<sup>272</sup> & devices that attract writers who hope to be pithy<sup>273</sup>, but most of them are simply bothersome. The longest way round is usually the shortest way home, & the one truly reliable shortcut in writing is to choose words that are strong & surefooted<sup>274</sup> to carry readers on their way.” – Strunk Jr. and White, 2019, Chap. 5, Sect. 19, p. 98

### 1.5.20 Avoid foreign languages

“The writer will occasionally find it convenient or necessary to borrow from other languages. Some writers, however, from sheer exuberance<sup>275</sup> or a desire to show off, sprinkle<sup>276</sup> their work liberally<sup>277</sup> with foreign expressions, with no regard for the reader’s comfort. It is a bad habit. Write in English.” – Strunk Jr. and White, 2019, Chap. 5, Sect. 20, p. 99

### 1.5.21 Prefer the standard to the offbeat

“Young writers will be drawn at every turn toward eccentricities<sup>278</sup> in language. They will hear the beat of new vocabularies, the exciting rhythms of special segments<sup>279</sup> of their society, each speaking a language of its own. All of us come under the spell of these unsettling<sup>280</sup> drums; the problem for beginners is to listen to them, learn the words, feel the vibrations<sup>281</sup>, & not be carried away.

Youths invariably<sup>282</sup> speak to other youths in a tongue of their own devising: they renovate<sup>283</sup> the language with a wild vigor, as they would a basement apartment. By the time this paragraphs sees print, *psyched*, *nerd*, *ripoff*, *dude*, *geek*, & *funky* will be the words of yesteryear, & we will be fielding more recent ones that have come bouncing into our speech –

<sup>267</sup>**simile** [n] [countable, uncountable] a word or phrase that compares something to something else, using the words *like* or *as*, e.g., *a face like a mask* or *as white as snow*; the use of such words & phrases.

<sup>268</sup>**metaphor** [n] [countable, uncountable] **1. metaphor (for something)** something that represents another situation or idea; **2.** a word or phrase used to describe somebody/something else, in a way that is different from its normal use, in order to show that the 2 things have the same qualities & to make the description more powerful; the use of such words & phrases.

<sup>269</sup>**swordfish** [n] [countable, uncountable] (plural **swordfish**) a large sea fish with a very long, thin, pointed upper jaw.

<sup>270</sup>**hourglass** [n] a glass container holding sand that takes exactly an hour to pass through a small opening between the top & bottom sections; [a] [only before noun] a woman who has an **hourglass** figure, shape, etc. has large breasts & hips & a small waist.

<sup>271</sup>**self-defeating** [a] causing more problems & difficulties instead of solving them; not achieving what you wanted to achieve but having an opposite effect.

<sup>272</sup>**stratagem** [n] (*formal*) a trick or plan that you use to gain an advantage or to trick an opponent.

<sup>273</sup>**pithy** [a] (*approving*) (of a comment, piece of writing, etc.) short but expressed well & full of meaning.

<sup>274</sup>**sure-footed** [a] **1.** not likely to fall when walking or climbing on rough ground; **2.** confident & unlikely to make mistakes, especially in difficult situations.

<sup>275</sup>**exuberance** [n] [uncountable] the quality of being full of energy, excitement & happiness.

<sup>276</sup>**sprinkle** [v] **1.** [transitive] to shake small pieces of something or drops of a liquid on something; **2.** [transitive, usually passive] **sprinkle something with something** to include a few of something in something else, SYNONYM: **strew**; **3.** [intransitive] (*North American English*) if it sprinkles, it rains lightly, SYNONYM: **drizzle**; [n] **1.** (also **sprinkling**) [usually singular] a small amount of a substance that is dropped somewhere, or a number of things or people that are spread or included somewhere; **2.** (*especially North American English*) light rain.

<sup>277</sup>**liberally** [adv] **1.** in large amounts, SYNONYM: **freely**; **2.** in a way that is not completely accurate or exact.

<sup>278</sup>**eccentricity** [n] **1.** [uncountable] behavior that people think is strange or unusual; the quality of being unusual & different from other people; **2.** [countable, usually plural] an unusual act or habit.

<sup>279</sup>**segment** [n] **1.** a part of something that is separate from the other parts or can be considered separately; **2.** (*geometry*) part of a shape separated from the rest by at least 1 line or plane; the line between 2 points.

<sup>280</sup>**unsettling** [a] making you feel upset, nervous or worried.

<sup>281</sup>**vibration** [n] [countable, uncountable] **1. vibration (of something)** a continuous shaking movement; **2. vibration (of something)** (*physics*) oscillation in a substance about its equilibrium state.

<sup>282</sup>**invariably** [adv] in every case; every time, SYNONYM: **always**.

<sup>283</sup>**renovate** [v] **renovate something** to repair & paint an old building, a piece of furniture, etc. so that it is in good conditions again.

some of them into our dictionary as well. A new word is always up for survival. Many do survive. Others grow stale<sup>284</sup> & disappear. Most are, at least in their infancy<sup>285</sup>, more appropriate to conversation than to composition.

Today, the language of advertising enjoys an enormous circulation<sup>286</sup>. With its deliberate<sup>287</sup> infractions<sup>288</sup> of grammatical rules & its crossbreeding<sup>289</sup> of the parts of speech, it profoundly<sup>290</sup> influences the tongues & pens of children & adults. Your new kitchen range is so revolutionary it *obsoletes* all other ranges. Your counter top is beautiful because it is *accessorized* with gold-plated faucets. Your cigarette tastes good *like* a cigarette should. &, *like the man says*, you will want to try one. You will also, in all probability, want to try writing that way, using that language. You do so at your peril<sup>291</sup>, for it is the language of mutilation<sup>292</sup>.

Advertisers are quite understandably<sup>293</sup> interested in what they call “attention getting.” The man photographed must have lost an eye or grown a pink beard, or he must have 3 arms or be sitting wrong-end-to on a horse. This technique is proper in its place, which is the world of selling, but the young writer had best not adopt the device of mutilation in ordinary composition, whose purpose is to engage, not paralyze<sup>294</sup>, the readers senses. Buy the old-plated faucets if you will, but do not accessorize<sup>295</sup> your prose. To use the language well, do not begin by hacking it to bits; accept the whole body of it, cherish its classic form, its variety, & its richness.

Another segment of society that has constructed a language of its own business. People in business say that toner<sup>296</sup> cartridges<sup>297</sup> are *in short supply*, that they have *updated* the next shipment of these cartridges, & they they will *finalize* their recommendations at the next meeting of the board. They are speaking a language familiar & dear to them. Its portentous<sup>298</sup> nouns & verbs invest ordinary events with high adventure; executives walk among toner cartridges, caparisoned<sup>299</sup> like knights. We should tolerate them – every person of spirit wants to ride a white horse. The only question is whether business vocabulary is helpful to ordinary prose. Usually, the same ideas can be expressed less formidably<sup>300</sup>, if one makes the effort. A good many of the special words of business seem designed more to express the user’s dreams than to express a precise meaning. Not all such words, of course, can be dismissed summarily<sup>301</sup>; indeed, no word in the language can be dismissed offhand by anyone who has a healthy curiosity. *Update* isn’t a bad word; in the right setting it is useful. In the wrong setting, though, it is destructive, & the trouble with adopting coinages too quickly is that they will bedevil<sup>302</sup> one by insinuating<sup>303</sup> themselves where they do not belong. This may sound like rhetorical snobbery<sup>304</sup>, or plain stuffiness<sup>305</sup>; but you will discover, in the course of your work, that the setting of a word is just as restrictive as the setting of a jewel. The general rule here is to

<sup>284</sup>**stale** [a] **1.** (of food, especially bread & cake) no longer fresh & therefore unpleasant to eat; **2.** (of air, smoke, etc.) no longer fresh; smelling unpleasant; **3.** something that is **stale** has been said or done too many times before & is no longer interesting or exciting; **4.** a person who is **stale** has done the same thing for too long & so is unable to do it well or produce any new ideas.

<sup>285</sup>**infancy** [n] [uncountable] **1.** the time when a child is a baby or very young; **2.** the early development of something.

<sup>286</sup>**circulation** [n] **1.** [uncountable] the movement of blood around the body; **2.** [uncountable] the movement of something (e.g. air, water or gas) around an area or inside a system or machine; **3.** [uncountable] the fact of goods, information or ideas passing from 1 person or place to another; **4.** [countable, usually singular] the usual number of copies of a newspaper or magazine that are sold each day, week, etc.

<sup>287</sup>**deliberate** [a] done on purpose rather than by accident, SYNONYM: **intentional**, OPPOSITE: **unintentional**; [v] [intransitive, transitive] to think very carefully about something, usually before making a decision.

<sup>288</sup>**infraction** [n] [countable, uncountable] (*formal*) an act of breaking a rule or law, SYNONYM: **infringement**.

<sup>289</sup>**cross-breeding** [n] [uncountable] the activity of making an animal or plant breed (= produce young animals/new plants) with a different type.

<sup>290</sup>**profoundly** [adv] **1.** in a way that has a very great effect on somebody/something; **2.** extremely; **3.** (*medical*) very seriously; completely.

<sup>291</sup>**peril** [n] (*formal or literary*) **1.** [uncountable] serious danger; **2.** [countable, usually plural] **peril (of something)** the fact of something being dangerous or harmful.

<sup>292</sup>**mutilation** [n] [uncountable, countable] **1.** severe damage to somebody’s body, especially when part of it is cut or torn off; the act of causing such damage; **2.** severe damage to something; the act of causing severe damage to something.

<sup>293</sup>**understandably** [adv] in a way that seems normal & reasonable in a particular situation, SYNONYM: **naturally**.

<sup>294</sup>**paralyze** [v] (*British English*) (*North American English* **paralyze**) [often passive] **1.** **paralyze somebody** to make somebody unable to feel or move all or part of their body; **2.** **paralyze something** to prevent something from functioning normally.

<sup>295</sup>**accessorize** [v] (*British English* also **accessorise**) **accessorize something** to add fashionable items or extra decorations to something, especially to your clothes.

<sup>296</sup>**toner** [n] [uncountable, countable] **1.** a type of ink (= colored liquid) used in machines that print or photocopy; **2.** a liquid or cream used for making the skin on your face tighter & smoother.

<sup>297</sup>**cartridges** [n] **1.** (*North American English* also **shell**) a tube or case containing explosive & a bullet or shot, for shooting from a gun; **2.** a case containing something that is used in a machine, e.g. ink for a printer, film for a camera, etc. Cartridges are put into the machine & can be removed & replaced when they are finished or empty; **3.** a thin tube containing ink (= colored liquid for writing) which you put inside a pen.

<sup>298</sup>**portentous** [a] **1.** (*literary*) important as a sign or a warning of something that is going to happen in the future, especially when it is something unpleasant; **2.** (*formal, disapproving*) very serious & intended to impress people, SYNONYM: **pompous**.

<sup>299</sup>**caparisoned** [a] in the past a **caparisoned** horse or other animal was one covered with a decorated cloth.

<sup>300</sup>**formidably** [adv] in a way that makes you feel fear &/or respect, because something is impressive or powerful or seems very difficult.

<sup>301</sup>**summarily** [adv] immediately, without paying attention to the normal process that should be followed.

<sup>302</sup>**bedevil** [v] (*formal*) **bedevil somebody/something** to cause a lot of problems for somebody/something over a long period of time, SYNONYM: **beset**.

<sup>303</sup>**insinuate** [v] **1.** (*usually disapproving*) to suggest directly that something unpleasant is true, SYNONYM: **imply**; **2.** **insinuate yourself into something** (*formal, disapproving*) to succeed in gaining somebody’s respect, trust, etc. so that you can use the situation to your own advantage; **3.** **insinuate yourself/something + adv./prep.** (*formal*) to slowly move yourself or a part of your body into a particular position or place.

<sup>304</sup>**snobbery** [n] the attitudes & behavior of people who are snobs

<sup>305</sup>**stuffiness** [n] [uncountable] **1.** (*informal, disapproving*) the fact of being very serious, formal, boring or old-fashioned; **2.** the fact of being warm in an unpleasant way & without enough fresh air; **3.** (*especially North American English*) the fact of having a blocked nose because you have a cold.

prefer the standard. *Finalize*, for instance, is not standard; it is special, & it is a peculiarly fuzzy & silly word. Does it mean “terminate,” or does it mean “put into final form”? One can’t be sure, really, what it means, & one gets the impression that the person using it doesn’t know, either, & doesn’t want to know.

The special vocabularies of the law, of the military, of government are familiar to most of us. Even the world of criticism has a modest pouch of private words (*luminous*, *taut*), whose only virtue is that they are exceptionally nimble<sup>306</sup> & can escape from the garden of meaning over the wall. Of these critical words, Wolcott Gibbs once wrote, “. . . they are detached from the language & inflated like little balloons.” The young writer should learn to spot them – words that at 1st glance seem freighted with delicious meaning but that soon burst in air, leaving nothing but a memory of bright sound.

The language is perpetually<sup>307</sup> in flux<sup>308</sup>: it is a living stream, shifting, changing, receiving new strength from a thousand tributaries<sup>309</sup>, losing old forms in the backwaters<sup>310</sup> of time. To suggest that a young writer not swim in the main stream of this turbulence would be foolish indeed, & such is not the intent of these cautionary remarks. The intent is to suggest that in choosing between the formal & the informal, the regular & the offbeat<sup>311</sup>, the general & the special, the orthodox<sup>312</sup> & the heretical<sup>313</sup>, the beginner err<sup>314</sup> on the side of conservatism<sup>315</sup>, on the side of established usage. No idiom is taboo<sup>316</sup>, no accent forbidden<sup>317</sup>; there is simply a better chance of doing well if the writer holds a steady course, enters the stream of English quietly, & does not thrash<sup>318</sup> about.

“But,” you may ask, “what if it comes natural to me to experiment rather than conform<sup>319</sup>? What if I am a pioneer, or even a genius?” Answer: then be one. But do not forget that what may seem like pioneering may be merely evasion<sup>320</sup>, or laziness – the disinclination<sup>321</sup> to submit to discipline. Writing good standard English is no cinch<sup>322</sup>, & before you have managed it you will have encountered enough rough country to satisfy even the most adventurous<sup>323</sup> spirit.

Style takes its final shape more from attitudes of mind than from principles of composition, for, as an elderly practitioner once remarked, “Writing is an act of faith, not a trick of grammar.” This moral observation would have no place in a rule book were it not that style *is* the writer, & therefore what you are, rather than what you know, will at last determine your style. If you write, you must believe – in the truth & worth of the scrawl, in the ability of the reader to receive & decode the message. No one can write decently<sup>324</sup> who is distrustful of the reader’s intelligence, or whose attitude is patronizing<sup>325</sup>.

<sup>306</sup>**nimble** [a] 1. able to move quickly & easily, SYNONYM: **agile**; 2. able to think, react & adapt quickly.

<sup>307</sup>**perpetual** [a] [usually before noun] 1. continuing for a long period of time without interruption, SYNONYM: **continuous**; 2. frequently repeated, SYNONYM: **continual**.

<sup>308</sup>**flux** [n] 1. [countable, uncountable] **flux (of something)** (*specialist*) a flow; an act of flowing; in physics, **flux** can be the rate of flow of a liquid, a gas, energy or particles across a particular area; or the total electric or magnetic field passing through a surface; 2. [uncountable] continuous movement & change.

<sup>309</sup>**tributary** [n] a river or stream that flows into a larger river or a lake.

<sup>310</sup>**backwater** [n] 1. a part of a river away from the main part, where the water only moves slowly; 2. (*often disapproving*) a place that is away from the places where most things happen, & is therefore not affected by events, progress, new ideas, etc.

<sup>311</sup>**offbeat** [a] [usually before noun] (*informal*) different from what most people expect, SYNONYM: **unconventional**.

<sup>312</sup>**orthodox** [a] 1. (especially of beliefs or behavior) generally accepted or approved of; following generally accepted beliefs, SYNONYM: **traditional**; 2. following closely the traditional beliefs & practices of a religion; 3. (**Orthodox**) belonging to or connected with the Orthodox Church.

<sup>313</sup>**heretical** [a] 1. (of a religious belief or opinion) against the principles of a particular religion; 2. (of a belief or opinion) disagreeing strongly with what most people believe.

<sup>314</sup>**err** [v] [intransitive] to make a mistake; **err on the side of something** [idiom] to show too much of a good quality.

<sup>315</sup>**conservatism** [n] [uncountable] 1. the tendency to resist great or sudden change; 2. the belief that society should change as little as possible; 3. (**Conservatism**) the beliefs of a political party that has traditional ideas about society & that favors businesses that are privately owned & that operate with little government control.

<sup>316</sup>**taboo** [a] considered so offensive or embarrassing that people must not mention it; [n] 1. **taboo (against/on something)** a cultural or religious custom that does not allow people to do, use or talk about a particular thing; 2. **taboo (against/on something)** a general agreement not to do something or talk about something.

<sup>317</sup>**forbidden** [a] not allowed.

<sup>318</sup>**thrash** [v] 1. [transitive] **thrash somebody/something** to hit a person or an animal many times with a stick, etc. as a punishment; 2. [intransitive, transitive] to move or make something move in a way that is violent or show a loss of control; 3. [transitive] **thrash somebody/something** (*informal, especially British English*) to defeat somebody very easily in a game.

<sup>319</sup>**conform** [v] 1. [intransitive] to behave & think in the same way as most other people in a group or society; 2. [intransitive] to obey a rule or law, SYNONYM: **comply**; **conform to something** [phrasal verb] to agree with or match something.

<sup>320</sup>**evasion** [n] 1. [uncountable] the act of not doing something, especially something that legally or morally you should do; 2. [countable] a statement that somebody makes that avoids dealing with something or talking about something honestly & directly; 3. [uncountable] **evasion (of something)** the act of escaping or avoiding somebody/something.

<sup>321</sup>**disinclination** [n] [singular, uncountable] (*formal*) a lack of desire to do something; a lack of enthusiasm for something.

<sup>322</sup>**cinch** [n] [singular] (*formal*) 1. something that is very easy, SYNONYM: **doddle**; 2. (*especially North American English*) a thing that is certain to happen; a person who is certain to do something; [v] 1. **cinch something** (*especially North American English*) to fasten something tightly around the middle part of your body; to be fastened around the middle part of somebody’s body; 2. **cinch something** (*North American English*) to fasten a girth around a horse; 3. **cinch something** (*North American English, informal*) to make something certain.

<sup>323</sup>**adventurous** [a] 1. (*North American English also adventuresome*) (of a person) willing to take risks & try new ideas; enjoying being in new, exciting situations; 2. including new & interesting things, methods & ideas; 3. full of new, exciting or dangerous experiences, OPPOSITE: **unadventurous**.

<sup>324</sup>**decently** [adv] 1. well enough; to a good enough standard or quality; 2. honestly & fairly; in a way that involves treating people with respect; 3. in a way that is acceptable in a particular situation.

<sup>325</sup>**patronizing** [a] (*British English also patronising*) (*disapproving*) showing that you think you are better or more intelligent than somebody else, SYNONYM: **superior**.



Many references have been made in this book to “the reader,” who has been much in the news. It is now necessary to warn you that your concern for the reader must be pure: you must sympathize<sup>326</sup> with the reader’s plight<sup>327</sup> (most readers are in trouble about half the time) but never seek to know the reader’s wants. Your whole duty as a writer is to please & satisfy yourself, & the true writer always plays to an audience of one. Start sniffing the air, or glancing at the Trend Machine, & you are as good as dead, although you may make a nice living.

Full of belief, sustained & elevated<sup>328</sup> by the power of purpose, armed with the rules of grammar, you are ready for exposure. At this point, you may well pattern yourself on the fully exposed cow of Robert Louis Stevenson’s rhyme<sup>329</sup>. This friendly & commendable<sup>330</sup> animal, you may recall, was “blown by all the winds that pass/with all the showers.” & so must you as a young writer be. In our modern idiom, we would say that you must get wet all over. Mr. Stevenson, working in a plainer style, said it with felicity, & suddenly 1 cow, out of so many, received the gift of immortality. Like the steadfast<sup>331</sup> writer, she is at home in the wind & the rain; &, thanks to 1 moment of felicity, she will live on & on & on.” – Strunk Jr. and White, 2019, Chap. 5, Sect. 21, pp. 100–103

### 1.5.22 Afterword

“Will Strunk & E. B. White were unique collaborators<sup>332</sup>. Unlike Gilbert & Sullivan, or Woodward & Bernstein, they worked separately & decades apart.

We have no way of knowing whether Prof. Strunk took particular notice of Elwyn Brooks White, a student of his at Cornell University in 1919. Neither teacher nor pupil could have realized that their names would be linked as they now are. Nor could they have imagined that 38 years after they met, White would take this little gem of a textbook that Strunk had written for his students, polish it, expand it, & transform it into a classic.

E. B. White shared Strunk’s sympathy for the reader. To Strunk’s do’s & don’ts he added passages about the power of words & the clear expression of thoughts & feelings. To the nuts<sup>333</sup> & bolts<sup>334</sup> of grammar he added a rhetorical<sup>335</sup> dimension.

The editors of this edition have followed in White’s footsteps, once again providing fresh examples & modernizing usage where appropriate. *The Elements of Style* is still a little book, small enough & important enough to carry in your pocket, as I carry mine. It has helped me to write better. I believe it can do the same for you.” – Strunk Jr. and White, 2019, Afterword by Charles Osgood, p. 104

<sup>326</sup>**sympathize** [v] (*British English also sympathise*) **1.** [intransitive] **sympathize (with somebody/something)** to feel sorry for somebody; to show that you understand & feel sorry about somebody’s problems; **2.** [intransitive] **sympathize with somebody/something** to support or approve of somebody/something.

<sup>327</sup>**plight** [n] [singular] a difficult & sad situation.

<sup>328</sup>**elevated** [a] [usually before noun] **1.** higher than normal; **2.** high in rank; **3.** higher than the area around; above the level of the ground; **4.** having a high moral or intellectual level.

<sup>329</sup>**rhyme** [n] **1.** [uncountable] the use of words in a poem or song that have the same sound, especially at the ends of lines; **2.** [countable] a word that has the same sound or ends with the same sound as another word; **3.** [countable] a short poem in which the last word in the line has the same sound as the last word in another line, especially the next one; [v] [intransitive, transitive] (of 2 words of syllables) to have or end with the same sound; to put words that sound the same together, e.g. when writing poetry.

<sup>330</sup>**commendable** [a] (*formal*) deserving praise & approval.

<sup>331</sup>**steadfast** [a] (*literary, approving*) not changing in your attitudes or aims, SYNONYM: **firm**.

<sup>332</sup>**collaborator** [n] **1.** a person who works with another person to create or produce something such as book; **2. collaborator (with somebody/something)** a person who helps the enemy in a war, when they have taken control of the person’s country.

<sup>333</sup>**nut** [n] a small hard fruit with a very hard shell that grows on some trees.

<sup>334</sup>**bolt** [n] **1.** a long, narrow piece of metal that you slide across the inside of a door or window in order to lock it; **2.** a piece of metal like a thick nail without a point which is used with a circle of metal (= a nut) to fasten things together; **3. bolt of lightning** a sudden flash of lightning in the sky, appearing as a line; **4.** a short heavy arrow shot from a crossbow; **5.** a long piece of cloth wound in a roll around a piece of cardboard.

<sup>335</sup>**rhetorical** [a] **1.** connected with the art of rhetoric; **2. (often disapproving)** (of a speech or piece of writing) intended to influence people, but not completely honest or sincere; **3. (of a question)** asked only to make a statement or to produce an effect rather than to get an answer.

## Chapter 2

# William Zinsser. *On Writing Well: The Classic Guide to Writing Nonfiction*

## Amazon/On Writing Well: The Classic Guide to Writing Nonfiction by William Zinsser

“*On Writing Well* has been praised for its sound advice, its clarity & the warmth of its style. It is a book for everybody who wants to learn how to write or who needs to do some writing to get through the day, as almost everybody does in the age of e-mail & the Internet.

Whether you want to write about people or places, science & technology, business, sports, the arts or about yourself in the increasingly popular memoir genre, *On Writing Well* offers you fundamental principles as well as the insights of a distinguished writer & teacher. With > 10<sup>6</sup> copies sold, this volume has stood the test of time & remains a valuable resource for writers & would-be writers.”

### Popular Highlights in Zinsser, 2016

- “But the secret of good writing is to strip every sentence to its cleanest components.”
- “Clear thinking becomes clear writing; one can’t exist without the other.”
- “Writers must therefore constantly ask: what am I trying to say? Surprisingly often they don’t know.”

### Editorial Reviews

#### Review

- “*On Writing Well* belongs on any shelf of serious reference works for writers.” – New York Times
- “Not since *The Elements of Style* has there been a guide to writing as well presented & readable as this one. A love & respect for the language is evident on every page.” – Library Journal

### About William Zinsser

“WILLIAM ZINSSER is a writer, editor & teacher. He began his career on the New York *Herald Tribune* & has since written regularly for leading magazines. During the 1970s he was master of Branford College at Yale. His 17 books, ranging from baseball to music to American travel, include the influential *Writing to Learn* & *Writing About Your Life*. He teaches at the New School in New York.”

### Introduction

“1 of the pictures hanging in my office in mid-Manhattan is a photograph of the writer E. B. WHITE. It was taken by JILL KREMENTZ when White was 77 years old, at his home in North Brooklin, Maine. A white-haired man is sitting on a plain<sup>1</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup>plain [a] (plainer, plainest) 1. easy to see or understand, SYNONYM: clear; 2. [only before noun] expressed in a clear & simple way, without using technical language; 3. not trying to deceive anyone; honest & direct; 4. not decorated or complicated; simple. In computing, **plain text** is data representing text that is not written in code or using special formatting & can be read, displayed or printed without much processing.; 5.



wooden<sup>2</sup> bench<sup>3</sup> at a plain wooden table – 3 boards<sup>4</sup> nailed<sup>5</sup> to 4 legs – in a small boathouse<sup>6</sup>. The window is open to a view across the water. White is typing on a manual<sup>7</sup> typewriter<sup>8</sup>, & the only other objects are an ashtray<sup>9</sup> & a nail keg<sup>10</sup>. The keg, I don't have to be told, is his wastebasket<sup>11</sup>.

Many people from many corners<sup>12</sup> of my life – writers & aspiring<sup>13</sup> writers, students & former students – have seen that picture. They come to talk through a writing problem or to catch me up on their lives. But usually it doesn't take more than a few minutes for their eye to be drawn to the old man sitting at the typewriter. What gets their attention is the simplicity of the process. White has everything he needs: a writing implement<sup>14</sup>, a piece of paper, & a receptacle<sup>15</sup> for all the sentences that didn't come out the way he wanted them to.

Since then writing has gone electronic<sup>16</sup>. Computers have replaced the typewriter, the delete key has replaced the wastebasket, & various other keys insert, move & rearrange whole chunks<sup>17</sup> of text. But nothing has replaced the writer. He or she is still stuck with the same old job of saying something that other people will want to read. That's the point of the photograph, & it's still the point – 30 years later – of this book.

I 1st wrote *On Writing Well* in an outbuilding<sup>18</sup> in Connecticut that was as small & as crude<sup>19</sup> as White's boathouse. My tools were a dangling<sup>20</sup> lightbulb<sup>21</sup>, an Underwood standard typewriter, a ream<sup>22</sup> of yellow copy paper & a wire<sup>23</sup>

without marks or a patter on it; **6.** [only before noun] (used for emphasis) simple; nothing but, SYNONYM: **sheer**; [n] (**plains** [plural]) a large area of flat land.

<sup>2</sup>**wooden** [a] [usually before noun] made of wood.

<sup>3</sup>**bench** [n] **1.** [countable] a long seat for ≥ 2 people, usually made of wood; **2. the bench** [singular] (*law*) a judge in court or the seat where he/she sits; the position of being a judge or magistrate; **3.** [countable, usually plural] (in British parliament) a seat where a particular group of politicians sit; **4. the bench** [singular] (*sport*) the seats where players sit when they are not playing in the game; **5.** (also **workbench**) [countable] a long heavy table used for doing practical jobs, working with tools, etc.

<sup>4</sup>**board** [n] **1.** [countable + singular or plural verb] **board (of somebody/something)** a group of people who have power to make decisions & control a company or other organization; **2.** [countable] used in the name of some organizations; **3.** [countable] vertical surface on which to write or attach notices; **4.** [countable] a thin, flat piece of wood or other stiff material on which to cut things, play games or perform other activities; **5.** [countable, uncountable] a long thin piece of strong hard material, especially wood, used, e.g., for making floors, building walls & roofs, & making boats; **6.** [uncountable] the meals that are provided when you stay in a place such as a hotel; **across the board** [idiom] involving or applying to everyone or everything.

<sup>5</sup>**nail** [n] **1.** the thin hard layer covering the outer tip of the fingers or toes; **2.** a small thin pointed piece of metal with a flat head, used for joining pieces of wood together or hanging things on a wall; [v] **1. nail something (+ adv./prep./adj.)** to fasten something to something with a nail or nails; **2. nail somebody (informal)** to catch somebody & prove they are guilty of a crime or of doing something bad; **3. nail a lie, myth, etc. (informal)** to prove that something is not true; **4. nail something (informal)** to achieve something or something right, especially in sport.

<sup>6</sup>**boathouse** [n] a building next to a river or lake for keeping a boat in.

<sup>7</sup>**manual** [a] **1.** [only before noun] manual work involves using mainly physical strength; a manual worker has a job that involves mainly physical work; **2.** [usually before noun] done by somebody with their hands rather than using a machine; **3.** [only before noun] connected with the hands; [n] **1. manual (of something)** a book that tells you how to do something; **2.** a book that describes the parts of a machine & explains how to operate it.

<sup>8</sup>**typewriter** [n] a machine that produces writing similar to print. It has keys that you press to make metal letters or signs hit a piece of paper through a long, narrow piece of cloth covered with ink (= colored liquid).

<sup>9</sup>**ashtray** [n] a container into which people who smoke put ash, cigarette ends, etc.

<sup>10</sup>**keg** [n] **1.** [countable] a round wooden or metal container with a flat top & bottom, used especially for storing beer, like a barrel but smaller; **2. (British English)** (also **keg beer** *British & North American English*) [uncountable] (in the UK) beer served from metal containers, using gas pressure.

<sup>11</sup>**wastebasket** [n] (*North American English*) (*British English wastepaper basket*) a basket or other container for waste paper, etc.

<sup>12</sup>**corner** [n] **1.** a part of something where 2 or more sides, lines or edges join; **2.** the area inside a room or other space near the place where 2 walls or other surfaces meet; **3.** the part at the end of the mouth or an eye; **4.** a place where 2 streets or roads join; **5. corner of something** a region or an area of a place (sometimes used for one that is far away or difficult to reach).

<sup>13</sup>**aspire** [v] [intransitive] to have a strong desire to achieve or to become something.

<sup>14</sup>**implement** [v] **implement something** to start to use a new plan, system or law, SYNONYM: **carry something out**.

<sup>15</sup>**receptacle** [n] **1. receptacle (for something)** (*formal*) a container for putting something in; **2.** (also **outlet** (*both North American English*)) (also **socket** *British & North American English*) (*British English also power point*) a device in a wall that you put a plug into (= a small plastic object with 2 or 3 metal pins) in order to connect electrical equipment to the power supply of a building.

<sup>16</sup>**electronic** [a] [usually before noun] **1.** (of a device) having or using many small parts, such as microchips, that control & direct a small electric current; **2.** done by means of a computer or other electronic device, especially over a network; **3.** connected with electronic equipment; **4.** connected with electron; **5.** connected with electronics.

<sup>17</sup>**chunk** [n] **1.** a thick, solid piece that has been cut or broken off something; **2. (informal)** a fairly large amount of something; **3. (linguistics)** a phrase or group of words that can be learnt as a unit by somebody who is learning a language.

<sup>18</sup>**outbuilding** [n] [usually plural] a building such as a shed or stable that is built near to, but separate from, a main building.

<sup>19</sup>**crude** [a] (**cruder, crudest**) **1.** [usually before noun] (of oil or another natural substance) in its natural state, before it has been treated with chemicals; **2.** (of figures) not adjusted or corrected; **3.** (of an estimate or guess) simple & not very accurate but giving a general idea of something; **4.** (of an object, machine, etc.) simple & basic; not showing much skill or attention to detail; **5.** (of people or the way they behave) offensive or rude, especially about sex.

<sup>20</sup>**dangle** [v] **1.** [intransitive, transitive] to hang or move freely; to hold something so that it hangs or moves freely; **2.** [transitive] **dangle something (before/in front of somebody)** to offer somebody something good in order to persuade them to do something.

<sup>21</sup>**light bulb** [n] (also **bulb**) the glass part that fits into an electric lamp, etc. to give light when it is switched on.

<sup>22</sup>**ream** [n] **1. reams** [plural] (*informal*) a large quantity of writing; **2.** [countable] (*specialist*) 500 sheets of paper; [v] (*North American English, informal*) **ream somebody** to treat somebody unfairly or cheat them.

<sup>23</sup>**wire** [n] **1.** [uncountable, countable] metal in the form of thin thread; a piece of this; **2.** [countable, uncountable] a piece of wire that is used to carry an electric current or signal.

wastebasket. I had then been teaching my nonfiction<sup>24</sup> writing course at Yale for 5 years, & I wanted to use the summer of 1975 to try to put the course into a book.

E. B. White, as it happened, was very much on my mind. I had long considered him my model as a writer. His was the seemingly<sup>25</sup> effortless<sup>26</sup> style – achieved<sup>27</sup>, I knew, with great effort – that I wanted to emulate<sup>28</sup>, & whenever I began a new project I would 1st read some White to get his cadences<sup>29</sup> into my ear. But now I also had a pedagogical<sup>30</sup> interest: White was the reigning<sup>31</sup> champ<sup>32</sup> of the arena<sup>33</sup> I was trying to enter. *The Elements of Style*, his updating of the book that had most influenced *him*, written in 1919 by his English professor at Cornell, WILLIAM STRUNK JR., was the dominant<sup>34</sup> how-to<sup>35</sup> manual for writers. Tough<sup>36</sup> competition<sup>37</sup>.

Instead of competing with the Strunk & White book I decided to complement<sup>38</sup> it. *The Elements of Style* was a book of pointers<sup>39</sup> & admonitions<sup>40</sup>: do this, don't do that. What it *didn't* address was how to apply those principles to the various forms that nonfiction writing & journalism<sup>41</sup> can take. That's what I taught in my course, & it's what I would teach in my book: how to write about people & places, science & technology, history & medicine, business & education, sports & the arts & everything else under the sun that's waiting to be written about.

So *On Writing Well* was born, in 1976, & it's now in its 3rd generation of readers, its sales well over a million. Today I often meet young newspaper reporters who were given the book by the editor who hired them, just as those editors were 1st given the book by the editor who hired *them*. I also often meet gray-haired matrons<sup>42</sup> who remember being assigned the book in college & not finding it the horrible medicine they expected. Sometimes they bring that early edition for me to sign, its sentences highlighted in yellow. They apologize for the mess. I love the mess.

As America has steadily<sup>43</sup> changed in 30 years, so has the book. I've revised<sup>44</sup> it 6 times to keep pace<sup>45</sup> with new social

<sup>24</sup>**nonfiction** [n] [uncountable] books, articles, or texts about real facts, people, & events, OPPOSITE: **fiction**.

<sup>25</sup>**seemingly** [adv] in a way that appears to be true but many in fact not be, SYNONYM: **apparently**.

<sup>26</sup>**effortless** [a] needing little or no effort, so that it seems easy.

<sup>27</sup>**achieve** [v] to succeed in reaching a particular goal or result, especially by effort or skill, SYNONYM: **attain**.

<sup>28</sup>**emulate** [v] **1. emulate somebody/something** to try to do something as well as somebody else because you admire them; **2. emulate something (computing)** (of a computer program, etc.) to work in the same way as another computer, etc. & perform the same tasks.

<sup>29</sup>**cadence** [n] **1. (formal)** the rise & fall of the voice in speaking; **2.** the end of a musical phrase.

<sup>30</sup>**pedagogic** [a] (also **pedagogical** BrE) concerning methods of teaching.

<sup>31</sup>**reign** [n] **1. reign (of somebody)** the period during which a king, queen, emperor, etc. rules; **2. reign of something** the period during which an idea, a system, etc. has a lot of influence or control; [v] [intransitive] **1.** to rule as king, queen, emperor, etc.; **2.** to be the best or most important in a particular situation or area of skill.

<sup>32</sup>**champ** [v] [intransitive, transitive] **champ (something)** (especially of horses) to bite or eat something noisily; [n] an informal way of referring to a champion, often used in newspapers.

<sup>33</sup>**arena** [n] **1.** an area of activity, especially one where there is a lot of discussion or argument; **2.** a place with a flat open area in the middle & seats around it where people can watch sports & entertainment.

<sup>34</sup>**dominant** [a] **1.** stronger, & having more power & influence than other things or people, SYNONYM: **predominant**; **2.** more common, easier to notice, or more important than other things, SYNONYM: **predominant**; **3. (ecology)** (of a type of plant or animal) more common in a place than other types of plant or animal; **4. (biology)** connected with a characteristic that appears in an individual even if it only has 1 gene for this characteristic, passed on by only 1 of its parents.

<sup>35</sup>**how-to** [a] [only before noun] providing detailed instructions or advice on how to do something; [n] (plural **how-tos**) a guide providing detailed instructions or advice on how to do something.

<sup>36</sup>**tough** [a] (**tougher, toughest**) **1.** (of a thing) not easily damaged; strong; **2. (rather informal)** having or causing problems, SYNONYM: **difficult**; **3. (rather informal)** demanding that laws be obeyed, & not accepting any reasons for not obeying them, OPPOSITE: **soft**; **4. (rather informal)** (of a person) strong enough to deal successfully with difficult conditions or situations. **Tough** can sometimes suggest that somebody may be violent. The more formal word **resilient** does not suggest this.

<sup>37</sup>**competition** [n] **1.** [uncountable] (used especially about the world of business) a situation in which somebody/something tries to be more successful than somebody/something else, or tries to get something rather than let somebody/something else get it; **2. (the competition)** [singular] a person or business that is trying to be more successful than others; goods or services that are intended to be more successful than others; **3.** [uncountable, countable] (*ecology*) a situation in which animals, plants or other living things try to get resources, with the result that other animals, plants, etc. may not be able to get them; **4.** [countable] a contest to find out who is the best at something.

<sup>38</sup>**complement** [n] **1.** something that provides extra qualities, so that it improves or completes something else; **2.** [usually singular] the complete number or quantity that is possible or normal; **3. (grammar)** a word or phrase, especially an adjective or a noun phrase, that is used after a linking verb such as *be* or *become*, & describes the subject of the verb. In some descriptions of grammar, a **complement** is any word or phrase which is governed by a verb, usually coming after the verb in a sentence.; **4. complement (of something)** (*mathematics*) the members of a set that are not members of a particular subject; [v] to add to something in a way that improves it or completes it.

<sup>39</sup>**pointer** [n] **1.** a sign that something exists; a sign that shows how something may develop in the future; **2. (rather informal)** a piece of advice; **3. (computing)** a small symbol that marks a point on a computer screen.

<sup>40</sup>**admonition** [n] (also less frequent **admonishment**) [countable, uncountable] (*formal*) a warning to somebody about their behavior.

<sup>41</sup>**journalism** [n] [uncountable] the work of collecting & writing new stories for newspapers, magazines, radio or television.

<sup>42</sup>**matron** [n] **1. (British English)** a woman who works as a nurse in a school; **2. (British English)** a senior nurse in charge of the other nurses in a hospital.

<sup>43</sup>**steadily** [adv] **1.** gradually & in an even & regular way; **2.** without any change or interruption; **slowly but surely/steadily** [idiom] making slow but definite progress.

<sup>44</sup>**revise** [v] **1. [transitive] revise something** to change something, such as book, process or rule, in order to improve it or make it more suitable; **2. [transitive] revise something** to change an opinion or a plan, usually because of new information; **3. [transitive] revise something (+ adv./prep.)** to change something, such as estimate or price, in order to correct or improve it; **4. [intransitive] revise (for something)** (*British English*) to prepare for an exam by looking again at work that you have done.

<sup>45</sup>**pace** [n] **1.** [uncountable, singular] **pace (of something)** the speed at which something happens; **2.** [singular, uncountable] the speed at which somebody/something walks, runs or moves; **3.** [countable] an act of stepping once when walking or running; the distance traveled when

trends<sup>46</sup> (more interest in memoir<sup>47</sup>, business, science & sports), new literary trends (more women writing nonfiction<sup>48</sup>), new demographic<sup>49</sup> patterns<sup>50</sup> (more writers from other cultural<sup>51</sup> traditions<sup>52</sup> a belief, custom, story of way of doing something that has existed for a long time among a particular group of people; a set of these beliefs, etc.), new technologies<sup>53</sup> (the computer) & new words & usages<sup>54</sup>. I've also incorporated<sup>55</sup> lessons I learned by continuing to wrestle<sup>56</sup> with the craft<sup>57</sup> myself, writing books on subjects I hadn't tried before: baseball & music & American history. My purpose<sup>58</sup> is to make myself & my experience available. If readers connect with my book it's because they don't think they're hearing from an English professor. They're hearing from a working writer.

My concerns as a teacher have also shifted. I'm more interested in the intangibles<sup>59</sup> that produce good writing – confidence<sup>60</sup>, enjoyment<sup>61</sup>, intention<sup>62</sup>, integrity<sup>63</sup> – & I've written new chapters on those values. Since the 1990s I've also taught an adult course on memoir & family story at the New School. My students are men & women who want to use writing to try to understand who they are & what heritage<sup>64</sup> they were born into. Year after year their stories take me deeply into their lives & into their yearning<sup>65</sup> to leave a record of what they have done & thought & felt. Half the people in America, it seems, are writing a memoir.

The bad news is that most of them are paralyzed by the size of the task. How can they even begin to impose<sup>66</sup> a coherent<sup>67</sup> shape on the past – that vast<sup>68</sup> sprawl<sup>69</sup> of half-remembered people & events & emotions? Many are near

doing this.

<sup>46</sup>**trend** [n] a general direction in which a situation is changing or developing.

<sup>47</sup>**memoir** [n] **1.** (memoirs) [plural] an account written by somebody, especially somebody famous, about their life & experiences; **2.** [countable] **memoir (of somebody/something)** a written account of somebody's life, a place or an event, written by somebody who knows it well.

<sup>48</sup>**nonfiction** [n] [uncountable] books, articles, or texts about real facts, people, & events.

<sup>49</sup>**demographic** [a] connected with the population & different groups within it; [n] **1.** (demographics) [plural] data about the population & different groups within it; **2.** [singular] a particular group of people within the population who have a common characteristic.

<sup>50</sup>**pattern** [n] **1.** the regular way in which something happens or is done; **2.** a regular arrangement of lines, shapes, colors, etc. found in similar objects or as a design of material, etc. In science, **pattern formation** is the scientific study of patterns in nature: *Pattern formation is a central process in the study of development*; **3.** [usually singular] **pattern (for something)** an example for others to copy; [v] **pattern something (specialist)** to give a clear or regular form to something in nature or society.

<sup>51</sup>**cultural** [a] [usually before noun] **1.** connected with the customs, beliefs, art, way of life or social organization of a particular country or group; **2.** connected with activities such as film, literature, music & art, thought of as a group.

<sup>52</sup>**tradition** [n] [countable, uncountable]

<sup>53</sup>**technology** [n] (plural **technologies**) [uncountable, countable, usually plural] equipment, machines & processes that are developed using knowledge of engineering & science; the knowledge used in developing them.

<sup>54</sup>**usage** [n] **1.** [uncountable] the fact of something being used; how much something is used; **2.** [uncountable, countable] the way in which words are used in a language; **3.** [countable] a custom, practice or habit that people have.

<sup>55</sup>**incorporate** [v] **1.** to include something so that it forms a part of something; **2.** [usually passive] (*business*) to create a legally recognized company.

<sup>56</sup>**wrestle** [v] **1.** [intransitive, transitive] to fight somebody by holding them & trying to throw or force them to the ground, sometimes as a sport; **2.** [intransitive, transitive] to struggle physically to move or manage something; **3.** [intransitive] to struggle to deal with something that is difficult, SYNONYM: **battle, grapple**.

<sup>57</sup>**craft** [n] **1.** [countable, uncountable] an activity involving a special skill at making things with your hands; **2.** [singular] all the skills needed for a particular activity; **3.** (plural **craft**) [countable] a boat or ship; [v] [usually passive] **craft something** to make something using a special skill, SYNONYM: **fashion**.

<sup>58</sup>**purpose** [n] **1.** [countable, uncountable] the aim, intention or function of something; the thing that something is supposed to achieve; **2.** (purposes) [plural] what is needed or being considered in a particular situation; **3.** [uncountable, countable] the feeling that what you are doing is valuable; something important that you want to achieve.

<sup>59</sup>**intangible** [a] **1.** that exists but that is difficult to describe, understand or measure, OPPOSITE: **tangible**; **2.** (*business* that does not exist as a physical thing but is still valuable to a company.)

<sup>60</sup>**confidence** [n] [uncountable] **1.** the feeling that you can trust, believe in & be sure about the abilities or good qualities of somebody/something; **2.** a belief in your own ability to do things & be successful; **3.** the feeling that you are certain about something; **4.** (in) **confidence** a feeling of trust that somebody will keep information private.

<sup>61</sup>**enjoyment** [n] [uncountable] **1.** **enjoyment of something** the fact of having & using something; **2.** **enjoyment (of something)** the pleasure that you get from something.

<sup>62</sup>**intention** [n] [countable, uncountable] what you intend or plan to do; your aim.

<sup>63</sup>**integrity** [n] [uncountable] **1.** the quality of being honest & having strong moral principles; **2.** **integrity of something** the state of being whole & not divided, SYNONYM: **unity**; **3.** **integrity of something** the state of not being spoilt, or of not having mistakes.

<sup>64</sup>**heritage** [n] [usually singular] **1.** the history, traditions & qualities that a country or society has had for many years & that are considered an important part of its character; **2.** the country or part of the world where somebody's family originally came from; **3.** + **noun** used to describe things of special historical or natural value that are preserved for future generations of a country.

<sup>65</sup>**yearning** [n] [countable, uncountable] (*formal*) a strong & emotional desire, SYNONYM: **longing**.

<sup>66</sup>**impose** [v] **1.** to introduce something such as a new law, tax or system; to order that a law or punishment be used; **2.** **impose something (on/upon somebody/something)** to make somebody accept or follow the same opinions or beliefs as your own; **3.** **impose something (on/upon somebody/something)** to give something that is difficult or unpleasant to somebody/something; **4.** **impose yourself (on/upon somebody/something)** to make somebody/something accept you or your ideas.

<sup>67</sup>**coherent** [a] **1.** (of an argument, theory, statement or policy) logical & well organized; easy to understand & clear, OPPOSITE: **incoherent**; **2.** (of a person) able to talk & express yourself clearly; showing this, OPPOSITE: **incoherent**; **3.** made up of different parts that fit or work well together; **4.** (*physics*) (of waves) in phase with each other, OPPOSITE: **incoherent**.

<sup>68</sup>**vast** [a] extremely large in area, size or amount, SYNONYM: **huge**.

<sup>69</sup>**sprawl** [v] **1.** [intransitive] (+ **adv./prep.**) to sit, lie or fall with your arms & legs spread out in a relaxed or careless way; **2.** [intransitive] + **adv./prep.** to spread in an untidy way; to cover a large area; [n] [uncountable, countable, usually singular] a large area covered with buildings that spreads from the city into the countryside in an ugly way.



despair<sup>70</sup>. To offer some help & comfort<sup>71</sup> I wrote a book in 2004 called *Writing About Your Life*. It's a memoir of various events in my own life, but it's also a teaching book: along the way I explain the writing decisions I made. They are the same decisions<sup>72</sup> that confront<sup>73</sup> every writer going in search of his or her past: matters<sup>74</sup> of selection<sup>75</sup>, reduction<sup>76</sup>, organization<sup>77</sup> & tone<sup>78</sup>. Now, for this 7th edition, I've put the lessons I learned into a new chapter called "Writing Family History & Memoir."

When I 1st wrote *On Writing Well*, the readers I had in mind were a small segment<sup>79</sup> of the population: students, writers, editors, teachers & people who wanted to learn how to write. I had no inkling<sup>80</sup> of the electronic marvels<sup>81</sup> that would soon revolutionize<sup>82</sup> the act of writing. 1st came the word processor, in the 1990s, which made the computer an everyday tool for people who had never thought of themselves as writers. Then came the Internet & e-mail, in the 1990s, which continued the revolution<sup>83</sup>. Today everybody in the world is writing to everybody else, making instant<sup>84</sup> contact<sup>85</sup> across<sup>86</sup> every border<sup>87</sup>

<sup>70</sup>**despair** [n] [uncountable] the feeling of having lost all hope; [v] to stop having any hope that a situation will change or improve.

<sup>71</sup>**comfort** [n] **1.** [uncountable] the state of being physically relaxed & free from pain; **2.** [uncountable] the state of having pleasant life, with everything that you need; **3.** [uncountable] a feeling of not suffering or worrying so much; a feeling of being less unhappy; **4.** [singular] **comfort (to somebody)** a person or thing that helps you when you are suffering, worried or unhappy; **5.** [countable, usually plural] **comfort (of something)** a thing that makes your life easier or more comfortable; [v] **comfort somebody** to make somebody who is worried or unhappy feel better by being kind & sympathetic towards them.

<sup>72</sup>**decision** [n] **1.** [countable] a choice or judgment that you make after thinking & talking about what is the best thing to do; **2.** [uncountable] the process of deciding something.

<sup>73</sup>**confront** [v] **1.** (of problems or a difficult situation) to appear & need to be dealt with by somebody, SYNONYM: **face**; **2. confront something** to deal with a problem or difficult situation, SYNONYM: **face up to something**; **3. confront somebody** to face somebody so that they cannot avoid seeing & hearing you, especially in an unfriendly or dangerous situation; **4. confront somebody with somebody/something** to make somebody face or deal with an unpleasant or difficult person or situation.

<sup>74</sup>**matter** [n] **1.** [uncountable] a substance of a particular sort; **2.** [uncountable] physical substance in general that everything in the world consist of; **3.** [countable] a subject or situation that you must consider or deal with; **4. (matters)** [plural] the present situation; the situation that you are talking about, SYNONYM: **thing**; **5.** [singular] **matter of something** a situation that involves something or depends on something, SYNONYM: **question**; **6.** [uncountable] written or printed material; [v] [intransitive, transitive] (not used in the progressive tenses) to be important or have an important effect on somebody/something.

<sup>75</sup>**selection** [n] **1.** [uncountable, countable] the process of choosing somebody/something from a group of people or things, usually according to a system; **2.** [countable] a number of people or things that have been chosen from a larger group; **3.** [countable] **selection (of something)** a collection of things from which something can be chosen, SYNONYM: **range**; **4.** [uncountable] (*biology*) (in evolution) a process in which environmental or genetic factors influence which types of living thing are more successful than others.

<sup>76</sup>**reduction** [n] **1.** [countable, uncountable] the action or fact of making something smaller or less in amount, size or degree; **2.** [uncountable] **reduction of something to something** an explanation of a subject or problem in terms of another simpler or more basic one; **3.** [countable] an amount of money by which something is made cheaper; **4.** [uncountable, countable] **reduction (of something)** (*chemistry*) the fact of removing oxygen from a substance or adding hydrogen to a substance, OPPOSITE: **oxidation**; **5.** [uncountable, countable] (*chemistry*) the fact of adding 1 or more electrons to a substance.

<sup>77</sup>**organization** [n] (*British English also organisation*) **1.** [countable] an organized group of people with a particular purpose, such as a business or government department; **2.** [uncountable] the way in which the different parts of something are arranged, SYNONYM: **structure**; **3.** [uncountable] the act of making arrangements or preparations for something, SYNONYM: **planning**; **4.** [uncountable] the quality of being arranged in a neat, careful & logical way; the ability to plan your work or life well & in an efficient way.

<sup>78</sup>**tone** [n] **1.** [singular] the general character & attitude of something such as piece of writing; the atmosphere of an event; **2.** [countable] the quality of somebody's voice, especially expressing a particular emotion; **3.** [countable] the quality of a sound, especially the sound of a musical instrument or one produced by electronic equipment; **4.** [countable] **tone (of something)** the extent to which a particular form of a color is light or dark; **5.** [uncountable] how strong & firm your muscles or skin are.

<sup>79</sup>**segment** [n] **1.** a part of something that is separate from the other parts or can be considered separately; **2.** (*geometry*) part of a shape separated from the rest by at least 1 line or plane; the line between 2 points; [v] [often passive] **segment something** (*specialist*) to divide something into different parts.

<sup>80</sup>**inkling** [n] [usually singular] a slight knowledge of something that is happening or about to happen, SYNONYM: **suspicion**.

<sup>81</sup>**marvel** [n] **1.** a wonderful & surprising person or thing, SYNONYM: **wonder**; **2. marvels** [plural] wonderful results or things that have been achieved, SYNONYM: **wonders**; [v] [intransitive, transitive] **marvel (at something)** | **marvel that ...** | + **speech** to be very surprised or impressed by something.

<sup>82</sup>**revolutionize** [v] (*British English also revolutionise*) to completely change the way that something is done.

<sup>83</sup>**revolution** [n] **1.** [countable, uncountable] a great change in conditions, ways of working, beliefs, etc. that affects large numbers of people; **2.** [countable, uncountable] an attempt, by a large number of people, to change the government of a country, especially by violent action; **3.** [countable, uncountable] a complete circular movement around a point.

<sup>84</sup>**instant** [a] [usually before noun] happening immediately, SYNONYM: **immediate**; [n] [usually singular] **1.** a particular point in time, SYNONYM: **moment**; **2.** a very short period of time, SYNONYM: **moment**.

<sup>85</sup>**contact** [n] **1.** [uncountable] the act of communicating with somebody, especially regularly; **2.** [uncountable] the state of touching something/somebody; **3.** [uncountable] the state of meeting somebody or experiencing something; **4.** [countable, usually plural] a person that you know, especially somebody who can be helpful to you in your work; a meeting, communication or relationship with somebody; **5.** [countable] an electrical connection; **6.** a person who may be infectious because they have recently been near to somebody with an infectious disease; [v] to communicate with somebody, e.g. by telephone, letter or email.

<sup>86</sup>**across** [prep] **1.** from 1 side to the other side of something; **2.** on the other side of something; **3.** on or over a part of the body; **4.** in every part of a place, group of people, etc., SYNONYM: **throughout**; [adv] from 1 side to the other side; **across from somebody/something** [idiom] opposite somebody/something.

<sup>87</sup>**border** [n] **1.** the line that divides 2 countries or areas; the land near this line; **2.** the point at which a quality, subject, type of object, etc. is separated from another; **3. border (of something)** the edge of something; [v] **1. border something** (of a country or an area) to be next to or share a border with another country or area; **2. border something** to form a line along or around the edge of something.

& across every time zone. Bloggers<sup>88</sup> are saturating<sup>89</sup> the globe<sup>90</sup>.

On 1 level the new torrent<sup>91</sup> is good news. Any invention<sup>92</sup> that reduces<sup>93</sup> the fear<sup>94</sup> of writing is up there with air-conditioning & the lightbulb. But, as always, there's a catch.<sup>95</sup> Nobody told all the new computer writers that

the essence of writing is rewriting<sup>96</sup>. Just because they're writing fluently<sup>97</sup> doesn't mean they're writing well.

That condition was 1st revealed<sup>98</sup> with the arrival<sup>99</sup> of the word processor<sup>100</sup>. 2 opposite<sup>101</sup> things happened: good writers got better & bad writers got worse. Good writers welcomed<sup>102</sup> the gift<sup>103</sup> of being able to fuss<sup>104</sup> endlessly<sup>105</sup> with their sentences – pruning<sup>106</sup> & revising & reshaping<sup>107</sup> – without the drudgery<sup>108</sup> of retyping. Bad writers became even more verbose because writing was suddenly so easy & their sentences looked so pretty<sup>109</sup> on the screen. How could such beautiful sentences not be perfect?

<sup>88</sup>**blogger** [n] a person who writes a blog.

<sup>89</sup>**saturate** [v] **1. saturate something (with something)** to make something completely wet; **2.** [often passive] **saturate something (with something)** to fill something completely with something so that it is impossible to add any more.

<sup>90</sup>**globe** [n] **1. (the globe)** [singular] the world (used especially to emphasize its size); **2.** [countable] an object shaped like a ball with a map of the world on its surface.

<sup>91</sup>**torrent** [n] **1.** a large amount of water moving very quickly; **2.** a large amount of something that comes suddenly & violently, SYNONYM: deluge.

<sup>92</sup>**invention** [n] **1.** [countable] something that has been created or designed that has not existed before; **2.** [uncountable] **invention of something** the act of creating or designing something that has not existed before; **3.** [countable, uncountable] the act of saying or describing something, & pretending that it is true, especially in order to deceive people; something that is said or described in this way; **4.** [uncountable] the ability to have new & interesting ideas.

<sup>93</sup>**reduce** [v] **1.** [transitive, often passive] to make something less or smaller in size, amount or degree; **2.** [intransitive] **reduce (from something) (to something)** to become less or smaller in size, amount or degree; **3.** [transitive, often passive] **reduce something (to something)** (*chemistry*) to remove oxygen from a substance or add hydrogen to a substance; **4.** [transitive, often passive] **reduce something (to something)** (*chemistry*) to add 1 or more electrons to a substance; to have 1 or more electrons added; **reduce somebody/something to something** [phrasal verb] [usually passive] to force somebody/something into a worse state or condition; **reduce something to something** | **reduce to something** [phrasal verb] to change something to a more general or more simple form; to be changed in this way.

<sup>94</sup>**fear** [n] [uncountable, countable] the bad feeling that you have when you are in danger, when something bad might happen, or when a particular thing frightens you.

<sup>95</sup>**catch** [v] **1. catch somebody/something** to capture a person or an animal that tries or would try to escape; **2. catch something** to stop & hold a moving object, especially in your hands; **3.** [often passive] to cause somebody to be in a difficult & usually unexpected situation; **4.** to find or discover somebody doing something, especially something wrong; **5. catch somebody's attention, imagination, etc.** if something catches your attention, imagination, etc. you notice it & feel interested in it, SYNONYM: **capture**; **6. catch something** to show or describe something accurately, SYNONYM: **capture**; **7. catch sight/a glimpse of somebody/something** to notice somebody/something, if only for a moment; **8. catch something (from somebody/something)** to get an illness; **9. catch fire** to begin to burn; **10. catch something** to be in time for a bus, train, plane, etc. & get on it; [n] **1. catch (of something)** an act of catching something; **2.** an amount of fish that are caught.

<sup>96</sup>**essence** [n] [uncountable] **essence (of something)** the most important quality or feature of something, that makes it what it is; **in essence** [idiom] in the most important & basic ways, without considering things that are less important; **of the essence** [idiom] necessary & very important.

<sup>97</sup>**fluently** [adv] **1.** if you speak a language or read fluently, you speak or read easily & well; **2.** in a way that is smooth & shows skill.

<sup>98</sup>**reveal** [v] **1.** to make something known to somebody, SYNONYM: **disclose**; **2.** to show something that previously could not be seen.

<sup>99</sup>**arrival** [n] **1.** [uncountable, countable] an act of coming or being brought to a place, OPPOSITE: **departure**; **2.** [countable] a person or thing that comes to a place; **3.** [uncountable] **arrival of something** the time when a new technology or idea is introduced.

<sup>100</sup>**word processor** [n] a program or machine used to create, edit & store text documents, usually typed from a keyboard.

<sup>101</sup>**opposite** [a] **1.** [usually before noun] as different as possible from something; involving 2 different extremes; **2.** [usually before noun] on the other side of something or facing something; [n] **1. (the opposite)** [singular] the situation, idea or activity that is as different from another situation, etc. as it is possible to be, SYNONYM: **the reverse**; **2. (opposites)** [plural] people, ideas or situations that are as different as possible from each other; **the exact opposite** [idiom] a person or thing that is as different as possible from somebody/something else; [prep] on the other side of a particular area from somebody/something, & usually facing them.

<sup>102</sup>**welcome** [v] **1. welcome somebody (to something)** to greet somebody in a friendly way when they arrive somewhere; **2. welcome somebody (+ adv./prep.)** to be pleased that somebody has come or has joined an organization, activity, etc.; **3. welcome something** to be pleased to receive or accept something; [a] **1.** that you are pleased to have or receive; **2.** (of people) accepted or wanted somewhere.

<sup>103</sup>**gift** [n] **1.** something that you give to somebody without payment, SYNONYM: **present**; **2.** a natural ability; **3. gift (of something)** something that is freely available to somebody & is good to have; **4.** [usually singular] **gift (to/for somebody)** a thing that is very easy to do or an opportunity that somebody should not miss, e.g. because it gives them an advantage.

<sup>104</sup>**fuss** [n] **1.** [uncountable, singular] unnecessary excitement, worry or activity; **2.** [singular] anger or complaints about something, especially something that is not important; [v] **1.** [intransitive] to do things, or pay too much attention to things, that are not important or necessary; **2.** [intransitive] **fuss (about something)** to worry about things that are not very important.

<sup>105</sup>**endlessly** [adv] in a way that continues for a long time & seems to have no end.

<sup>106</sup>**pruning** [n] [uncountable] **1.** the activity of cutting off some of the branches from a tree, bush, etc. so that it will grow better & stronger; **2.** the act of making something smaller by removing parts; the act of cutting out parts of something.

<sup>107</sup>**reshape** [v] **reshape something** to change the shape or structure of something.

<sup>108</sup>**drudgery** [n] [uncountable] hard boring work.

<sup>109</sup>**pretty** [adv] (with adjectives & adverbs) (*rather informal*) **1.** to some extent; fairly; **2.** very; **pretty much/well** [idiom] (*rather informal*) almost; almost completely; [a] (**prettier, prettiest**) **1.** (used most often about a woman or girl) attractive without being very beautiful; **2.** (of places or things) attractive & pleasant to look at or to listen to without being large, beautiful or impressive.

E-mail is an impromptu<sup>110</sup> medium<sup>111</sup>, not conductive<sup>112</sup> to slowing down or looking back. It's ideal<sup>113</sup> for the never-ending<sup>114</sup> upkeep<sup>115</sup> of daily life. If the writing is disorderly<sup>116</sup>, no real harm is done. But e-mail is also where much of the world's business is now conducted<sup>117</sup>. Millions of e-mail messages every day give people the information they need to do their job, & a badly written message can do a lot of damage. So can a badly written Web site. The new age, for all its electronic wizardry<sup>118</sup>, is still writing-based.

*On Writing Well* is a craft book, & its principles haven't changed since it was written 30 years ago. I don't know what still newer marvels will make writing twice as easy in the next 30 years. But I do know they won't making writing twice as good. That will still require plain old hard thinking – what E. B. White was doing in his boathouse – & the plain old tools of the English language.

WILLIAM ZINSSER, Apr 2006" – Zinsser, 2016, pp. 5–8

## PART I: Principles.

### 2.1 The Transaction

"A school in Connecticut once held "a day devoted to the arts," & I was asked if I would come & talk about writing as a vocation<sup>119</sup>. When I arrived i found that a 2nd speaker had been invited – Dr. Brock (as I'll call him), a surgeon<sup>120</sup> who had recently<sup>121</sup> begun to write & had sold some stories to magazines. He was going to talk about writing as an avocation<sup>122</sup>. That made us a panel<sup>123</sup>, & we sat own to face a crowd of students & teachers & parents, all eager<sup>124</sup> to learn the secrets<sup>125</sup> of our glamorous<sup>126</sup> work.

Dr. Brock was dressed in a bright red jacket, looking vaguely<sup>127</sup> bohemian<sup>128</sup>, as authors are supposed to look, & the 1st question went to him. What was it like to be a writer?

<sup>110</sup>**impromptu** [adv] without preparation or planning; [a] done without preparation or planning, SYNONYM: **improvised**.

<sup>111</sup>**medium** [n] (plural **media**, **mediums**) In academic writing, the plural is usually **media**; **1.** a way of communicating information to people; **2.** something that is used for a particular purpose; **3.** (*biology*) a substance that something exists in or grows in or that it travels through; [a] [usually before noun] (abbr., **M**) in the middle between 2 sizes, amounts, times, temperatures, etc.; **in the long/short/medium run** [idiom] used to describe what will happen a long, short, etc. time in the future; **in the long/short/medium term** [idiom] used to describe what will happen a long, short, etc. time in the future.

<sup>112</sup>**conductive** [a] (*physics*) able to conduct electricity, heat, etc.

<sup>113</sup>**ideal** [a] **1.** perfect; most suitable; **2.** [only before noun] the best that can be imagined, but not likely to become real; **in an ideal/a perfect world** [idiom] used to say that something is what you would like to happen or what should happen, but you know it cannot; [n] **1. ideal (of somebody/something)** an idea or a standard that seems perfect & worth trying to achieve; **2.** [usually singular] **ideal (of something)** a person or thing considered as perfect.

<sup>114</sup>**never-ending** [a] seeming to last forever, SYNONYM: **endless**, **interminable**.

<sup>115</sup>**upkeep** [n] [uncountable] **1. upkeep (of something)** the cost or process of keeping something in good condition, SYNONYM: **maintenance**; **2. upkeep (of somebody/something)** the cost or process of giving a child or an animal the things that they need.

<sup>116</sup>**disorderly** [a] [usually before noun] (*formal*) **1.** (of people or behavior) showing lack of control; publicly noisy or violent; **2.** untidy, OPPOSITE: **orderly**.

<sup>117</sup>**conduct** [v] **1. conduct something** to organize &/or do a particular activity; **2. conduct something** (of a substance) to allow heat or electricity to pass along or through it; **3. conduct yourself + adv./prep.** (*formal*) to behave in a particular way; [n] [uncountable] (*formal*) **1.** a person's behavior; **2. conduct of something** the way in which a business or an activity is organized & managed.

<sup>118</sup>**wizardry** [n] [uncountable] a very impressive & clever achievement; great skill.

<sup>119</sup>**vocation** [n] **1.** [countable] **vocation (as something)** a type of work or way of life that you believe is especially suitable for you, SYNONYM: **calling**; **2.** [countable, uncountable] a belief that a particular type of work or way of life is especially suitable for you; a belief that you have been chosen by God to be a priest or nun, SYNONYM: **calling**.

<sup>120</sup>**surgeon** [n] a doctor who is trained to perform surgery.

<sup>121</sup>**recently** [adv] not long ago.

<sup>122</sup>**avocation** [n] (*formal*) a hobby or other activity that you do for interest & pleasure.

<sup>123</sup>**panel** [n] **1.** [countable + singular or plural verb] a group of experts who give their advice or opinion about something; **2.** [countable] a square or rectangular piece of wood, glass or metal that forms part of a larger surface such as a door or wall. A **solar panel** uses light & heat energy from the sun to produce electricity or heat water.; **3.** [countable] a flat board in a vehicle or on a piece of machinery where the controls & instruments are fixed; **4.** [countable] a section of a page that shows a particular piece of information.

<sup>124</sup>**eager** [a] very interested & excited by something that is going to happen or about something that you want to do, SYNONYM: **keen**.

<sup>125</sup>**secret** [a] **1.** known about by only a few people & kept hidden from others; not done in the presence of other people; **2.** [only before noun] used to describe actions & behavior that you do not want other people to know about; **3.** [only before noun] working secretly against a government's political opponents; [n] **1.** [countable] something that is known about by only a few people & not told to others; **2.** [countable, usually singular] (usually **the secret**) the best or only way to achieve something; the way a particular person achieves something; **3.** [countable, usually plural] **secret (of something)** a thing that is not yet fully understood or that is difficult to understand; **in secret** [idiom] without other people knowing about it.

<sup>126</sup>**glamorous** [a] (*also informal glam*) especially attractive & exciting, & different from ordinary things or people.

<sup>127</sup>**vaguely** [adv] **1.** in a way that is not detailed or exact; **2.** slightly.

<sup>128</sup>**bohemian** [n] a person, often somebody who is involved with the arts, who lives in a very informal way without following accepted rules of behavior; [a] living in a very informal way without following accepted rules of behavior, & often involved in the arts.



He said it was tremendous<sup>129</sup> fun. Coming home from an arduous<sup>130</sup> day at the hospital, he would go straight to his yellow pad<sup>131</sup> & write his tensions<sup>132</sup> away. The words just flowed. It was easy. I then said that writing wasn't easy & wasn't fun. It was hard & lonely, & the words seldom just flowed.

Next Dr. Brock was asked if it was important to rewrite. Absolutely not, he said. "Let it all hang out," he told us, & whatever form the sentences take will reflect the writer at his most natural. I then said that rewriting is the essence of writing. I pointed out that professional<sup>133</sup> writers rewrite their sentences over & over & then rewrite what they have rewritten.

"What do you do on days when it isn't going well?" Dr. Brock was asked. He said he just stopped writing & put the work aside for a day when it would go better. I then said that the professional writer must establish<sup>134</sup> a daily schedule<sup>135</sup> & stick<sup>136</sup> to it. I said that writing is a craft, not an art, & that the man who runs away from this craft because he lacks inspiration<sup>137</sup> is fooling himself. He is also going broke.

"What if you're feeling depressed<sup>138</sup> or unhappy<sup>139</sup>?" a student asked. "Won't that affect your writing?"

Probably<sup>140</sup> it will, Dr. Brock replied. Go fishing. Take a walk. Probably it won't, I said. If your job is to write every day, you learn to do it like any other job.

A student asked if we found it useful to circulate<sup>141</sup> in the literary world. Dr. Brock said he was greatly enjoying his new life as a man of letters, & he told several<sup>142</sup> stories of being taken to lunch by his publisher<sup>143</sup> & his agent<sup>144</sup> at Manhattan

<sup>129</sup>**tremendous** [a] (*rather informal*) very great, SYNONYM: **huge**.

<sup>130</sup>**arduous** [a] involving a lot of effort & energy, especially over a period of time.

<sup>131</sup>**pad** [n] of **soft material** **1.** a thick piece of soft material that is used, e.g., for cleaning or protecting something or for holding liquid; of **paper** **2.** a number of pieces of paper for writing or drawing on, that are fastened together at 1 edge; of **animal's foot** **3.** the soft part under the foot of a cat, dog, etc.; for **cleaning** **4.** a small piece of rough material used for cleaning pans, surfaces, etc.; for **spacecraft/helicopter** **5.** a flat surface where a spacecraft or a helicopter takes off & lands; for **protection** **6.** [usually plural] a piece of thick material that you wear in some sports, e.g. football & cricket, to protect parts of your body; of **water plants** **7.** the large flat leaf of some water plants, especially the water lily; **flat/apartment** **8.** [usually singular] (*informal*) the place where somebody lives, especially a flat; [v] **add soft material** **1.** [transitive, often passive] to put a layer of soft material in or on something in order to protect it, make it thicker or change its shape; **walk quietly** **2.** [intransitive] + **adv./prep.** to walk with quiet steps; **bills** **3.** [transitive] **pad something** (*North American English*) to dishonestly add items to bills to obtain more money.

<sup>132</sup>**tension** [n] **1.** [uncountable, countable, usually plural] a situation in which people do not trust each other, or feel unfriendly towards each other, & which may cause them to attack each other; **2.** [countable, uncountable] **tension (between A & B)** a situation in which the fact that there are different needs or interests causes difficulties; **3.** [uncountable] a feeling of anxiety & stress that makes it impossible to relax; **4.** [uncountable] the feeling of fear & excitement that is created by a writer or a film director; **5.** [uncountable] the state of being stretched tight; the extent to which something is stretched tight.

<sup>133</sup>**professional** [a] **1.** [only before noun] connected with a job that needs special training or skill, especially one that needs a high level of education; **2.** (of people) having a job that needs special training & a high level of education; **3.** showing that somebody is well trained & extremely skilled, SYNONYM: **competent**; **4.** suitable or appropriate for somebody working in a particular profession; **5.** doing something as a paid job rather than just for pleasure; [n] a person who does a job that needs special training & a high level of education.

<sup>134</sup>**establish** [v] **1. establish something** to start or create an organization, system or practice that will last for a long time, SYNONYM: **set something up**; **2. establish something** to start having a relationship, especially a formal one, with another person, group or country; **3.** to discover or find proof of the facts of a situation, SYNONYM: **ascertain**; **4. establish something** to make people accept a principle, claim or custom; **5. establish somebody/something/yourself (in something) (as something)** to succeed in something well enough to make people accept or respect you or make your future safe.

<sup>135</sup>**schedule** [n] **1.** [countable, uncountable] a plan for doing something, giving times when events should happen; **2.** [countable] a plan for the things that a particular person has to do, & the times when they have to do them, SYNONYM: **timetable**; **3.** [countable] a written list of things, e.g. prices of questions; **4.** (*North American English*) = **timetable**; **5.** [countable] (*law*) an addition to a formal document, especially one that is in the form of a list; **6.** [countable] a list of the television & radio programmes that are on a particular channel & the times that they start; [v] [often passive] to arrange for something to happen at a particular time.

<sup>136</sup>**stick** [v] **1.** [transitive, intransitive] to fix something to something else, usually with a sticky substance; to become fixed to something in this way; **2.** [intransitive] (*rather informal*) to become accepted; **stick out** | **stick something out** [phrasal verb] to be further out than something else or come through a hole; to push something further out than something else or through a hole; **stick to something** [phrasal verb] **1.** to act according to an argument or decision that you have made; **2.** to continue doing or using something & not change it; **stick with something** [phrasal verb] [no passive] to continue with something or continue doing something.

<sup>137</sup>**inspiration** [n] **1.** [uncountable] the experience of being made to feel confident & excited about doing something; **2.** [countable, usually singular] **inspiration (to somebody)** a person or thing that makes you feel confident & excited about doing something; **3.** [uncountable, countable, usually singular] the idea of doing something or the reason for doing something; the person or thing that provides this.

<sup>138</sup>**depressed** [a] **1.** suffering from the medical condition of depression. In non-academic English, **depression** is often used to refer to a less serious feeling of sadness, which is not considered to be a medical condition.; **2.** [usually before noun] (of a place or an industry) without enough economic activity or jobs for people; **3.** having a lower amount or level than usual.

<sup>139</sup>**unhappy** [a] (**unhappier, unhappiest**) (You can also use **more unhappy & most unhappy**) **1.** not happy; sad; **2.** not pleased or satisfied with something; **3.** [only before noun] unfortunate or not suitable.

<sup>140</sup>**probably** [adv] used to say that something is likely to be true or to happen.

<sup>141</sup>**circulate** [v] **1.** [intransitive, transitive] to move continuously or freely around a system or area; to cause something to move in this way; **2.** [intransitive, transitive] (of ideas or information) to pass from place to place or person to person; to pass on ideas or information, especially to all the members of a group.

<sup>142</sup>**several** [determiner, pronoun] more than 2 but not very many.

<sup>143</sup>**publisher** [n] a person or company that prepares & prints books, magazines, newspapers or electronic products & makes them available to the public.

<sup>144</sup>**agent** [n] **1.** a person whose job is to act for, or manage the affairs of, other people or organizations in business, politics, etc.; **2. agent for/of something** a person or thing that has an important effect on a situation; **3.** (*specialist*) a chemical or a substance that produces an effect or a change or is used for a particular purpose; **4.** (*grammar*) the person or thing that does an action (expressed as the subject of an active verb, or in a 'by' phrase with a passive verb).

restaurants where writers & editors<sup>145</sup> gather<sup>146</sup>. I said that  
 professional writers are solitary drudges who seldom see other writers<sup>147 148 149</sup>.

“Do you put symbolism<sup>150</sup> in your writing?” a student asked me.

“Not if I can help it,” I replied. I have an **unbroken record** of missing the deeper meaning in any story, play or movie, & as for dance & mime<sup>151</sup>, I have never had any idea of what is being conveyed<sup>152</sup>.

“I love symbols!” Dr. Brock exclaimed<sup>153</sup>, & he described<sup>154</sup> with gusto<sup>155</sup> the joys<sup>156</sup> of weaving<sup>157</sup> them through his work.

So the morning went, & it was a revelation<sup>158</sup> to all of us. At the end Dr. Brock told me he was enormously<sup>159</sup> interested in my answers – it had never occurred to him that writing could be hard. I told him I was just as interested in *his* answers – it had never occurred to me that writing could be easy. Maybe I should take up surgery<sup>160</sup> on the side.

As for the students, anyone might think we left them bewildered<sup>161</sup>. But in fact we gave them a broader<sup>162</sup> glimpse<sup>163</sup> of the writing process than if only 1 of us had talked. For there isn’t any “right” way to do such personal work. There are all kinds of writers & all kinds of methods, & any method that helps you to say what you want to say is the right method for you. Some people write by day, others by night. Some people need silence<sup>164</sup>, others turn on the radio. Some write by hand, some by computer, some by talking into a tape recorder. Some people write their 1st draft in 1 long bust<sup>165</sup> & then revise; others can’t write the 2nd paragraph until they have fiddled<sup>166</sup> endlessly with the 1st.

<sup>145</sup>**editor** [n] (abbr., **ed.**) **1. editor (of something)** a person who chooses texts written by 1 or by several writers & prepares them to be published in a book or journal; **2.** a person who is in charge of a newspaper or magazine, or part of one, & who decides what should be included; **3. editor (of something)** a person who prepares a book to be published, e.g. by checking & correcting the text & making improvements.

<sup>146</sup>**gather** [v] **1.** [transitive] **gather something** to collect information from different sources; **2.** [intransitive, transitive] + **adv./prep.** to come together in 1 place to form a group; to bring people together in this way; **3.** [transitive] **gather something (together/up)** to bring things together; **4.** [transitive] **gather something** to collect plants, fruit, etc. from a wide area; **5.** [transitive] **gather something (up)** to pick or cut & collect crops to be stored; **6.** [transitive] **gather something** to increase in speed, force, etc., SYNONYM: **gain**; **7.** [transitive] (not used in the progressive tenses) to believe or understand that something is true because of information or evidence that you have, although you have not been told directly.

<sup>147</sup>**solitary** [a] **1.** [usually before noun] done alone; without other people; **2.** (of a person or an animal) usually or frequently spending time alone; **3.** (of a person, thing or place) alone, with no other people or things around, SYNONYM: **single**.

<sup>148</sup>**drudge** [n] a person who has to do long hard boring jobs.

<sup>149</sup>**seldom** [adv] not often, SYNONYM: **rarely**.

<sup>150</sup>**symbolism** [n] [uncountable] **1.** the use of symbols to represent ideas or qualities; **2. symbolism (of something)** the symbolic meaning attached to objects or facts.

<sup>151</sup>**mime** [n] (*also less frequent dumbshow*) [uncountable, countable] (especially in the theater) the use of movements of your hands or body & the expressions on your face to tell a story or to act something without speaking; a performance using this method of acting; [v] **1.** [transitive, intransitive] to act, tell a story, etc. by moving your body & face but without speaking; **2.** [intransitive, transitive] **mime (to something)** | **mime (something)** to pretend to sing a song that is actually being sung by somebody else on a recording.

<sup>152</sup>**convey** [v] **1.** to communicate information, a message, an idea or a feeling; **2.** to take, carry or transport somebody/something from 1 place to another; **3. (law)** to change the legal owner of a property or piece of land, SYNONYM: **transfer**.

<sup>153</sup>**exclaim** [v] [intransitive, transitive] to say something suddenly & loudly, especially because of strong emotion or pain.

<sup>154</sup>**describe** [v] **1.** [often passive] to give an account of something in words. **Described** is often used after a noun phrase, without *that is/was*, etc.; **2.** [often passive] to say what somebody/something is like; to say what somebody/something is; **3. describe something** to make a movement which has a particular shape; to form a particular shape; **4. describe something (specialist)** (of a diagram of calculation) to represent something.

<sup>155</sup>**gusto** [n] [uncountable] enthusiasm & energy in doing something.

<sup>156</sup>**joy** [n] **1.** [uncountable] a feeling of great happiness, SYNONYM: **delight**; **2.** [countable] a person or thing that causes you to feel very happy; **3.** [uncountable] (*British English, informal*) (in questions & negative sentences) success or satisfaction.

<sup>157</sup>**weave** [v] **1.** [transitive, intransitive] to make cloth by crossing threads or strips across, over & under each other by hand or by machine; **2.** [transitive] to put facts, events, details, etc. together to make a story or a closely connected whole.

<sup>158</sup>**revelation** [n] **1.** [countable] a fact that people are made aware of, especially one that has been secret & is surprising, SYNONYM: **disclosure**; **2.** [uncountable] **revelation (of something)** the act of making people aware of something that has been secret, SYNONYM: **disclosure**; **3.** [countable, uncountable] something that is considered to be a sign or message from God.

<sup>159</sup>**enormously** [adv] very; very much.

<sup>160</sup>**surgery** [n] (plural **surgeries**) **1.** [uncountable, countable] medical treatment of injuries or diseases that involves cutting open a person’s body, sewing up wounds, etc.; **2.** [countable] (*British English*) a place where a doctor sees patients; **3.** [countable] (*British English*) a time during which a doctor, an MP or another professional person is available to see people.

<sup>161</sup>**bewildered** [a] confused.

<sup>162</sup>**broad** [a] (**broadest, broadest**) **1.** wide; **2.** including a great variety of things, OPPOSITE: **narrow**; **3.** [only before noun] general; not detailed; **4.** with most people agreeing about something in a general way; **5.** covering a wide area.

<sup>163</sup>**glimpse** [n] [usually singular] **1.** a sight of somebody/something for a very short time, when you do not see the person or thing completely; **2.** a short experience of something that helps you to understand it; [v] **1. glimpse somebody/something** to see somebody/something for a moment, but not very clearly, SYNONYM: **catch, spot**; **2. glimpse something** to start to understand something.

<sup>164</sup>**silence** [n] **1.** [countable, uncountable] a situation when no one is speaking; **2.** [uncountable, singular] a situation in which somebody refuses to talk about something or to answer questions; **3.** [uncountable] a complete lack of noise or sound; [v] **silence somebody/something** to make somebody stop expressing opinions that are opposed to yours.

<sup>165</sup>**bust** [n] (*rather informal*) a period of economic difficulty or depression.

<sup>166</sup>**fiddle** [v] **1.** [intransitive] **fiddle (with something)** to keep touching or moving something with your hands, especially because you are bored or nervous; **2.** [transitive] **fiddle something (informal)** to change the details or figures of something in order to try to get money dishonestly or gain an advantage; **3.** [intransitive] (*informal*) to play music on the violin; **fiddle with** [phrasal verb] **fiddle around with something** | **fiddle with something** (*also fiddle about with something especially in British English*) **1.** to keep touching something or making small changes to something because you are not satisfied with it; **2.** to touch or move the parts of something in order to try to change it or repair it; [n] (*informal*) **1.** (*also violin*) [countable] a musical instrument with strings, that you hold under your chin & play with a bow; **2.** [countable] (*British English*)

But all of them are vulnerable<sup>167</sup> & all of them are tense<sup>168</sup>. They are driven by a compulsion<sup>169</sup> to put some part of themselves on paper, & yet they don't just write what comes naturally<sup>170</sup>. They sit down to commit<sup>171</sup> an act of literature, & the self who emerges on paper is far stiffer<sup>172</sup> than the person who sat down to write. The problem is to find the real man or woman behind the tension.

Ultimately<sup>173</sup> the product that any writer has to sell is not the subject being written about, but who he or she is. I often find myself reading with interest about a topic I never thought would interest me – some scientific quest, perhaps. What holds me is the enthusiasm of the writer for his field. How was he drawn into it? What emotional baggage<sup>174</sup> did he bring along? How did it change his life? It's not necessary to want to spend a year alone at Walden Pond to become involved with a writer who did.

This is the personal transaction<sup>175</sup> that's at the heart of good nonfiction writing. Out of it come 2 of the most important qualities that this book will go in search of: humanity & warmth<sup>176</sup>. Good writing has an aliveness that keeps the reader reading from 1 paragraph to the next, & it's not a question of gimmicks<sup>177</sup> to "personalize<sup>178</sup>" the author. It's a question of using the English language in a way that will achieve the greatest clarity & strength.

Can such principles be taught? Maybe not. But most of them can be learned." – Zinsser, 2016, pp. 12–13

something that is done dishonestly to get money, SYNONYM: **fraud**; **3.** [singular] (*British English*) something that is difficult to do.

<sup>167</sup>**vulnerable** [a] **vulnerable (to somebody/something)** weak & easily hurt physically or emotionally.

<sup>168</sup>**tense** [n] any of the forms of a verb that may be used to show the time of the action or state expressed by the verb; [a] **1.** (of a situation, an event, a period of time, etc.) making people have strong feelings such as anger or anxiety that often cannot be expressed; **2.** (of a person) nervous or anxious & unable to relax; **3.** (of a muscle or other part of the body) stretched tight rather than relaxed.

<sup>169</sup>**compulsion** [n] **1.** [uncountable, countable] strong pressure that makes somebody do something that they do not want to do; **2.** [countable] **compulsion to do something** a strong desire to do something, especially something that is dangerous or wrong, SYNONYM: **urge**.

<sup>170</sup>**naturally** [adv] **1.** existing or happening as a normal part of nature, without special help, treatment or action by somebody; **2.** in a way that you would expect, SYNONYM: **of course**; **3.** as a normal, logical result of something; **4.** in a way that shows or uses abilities or qualities that a person or an animal is born with; **come naturally (to somebody/something)** [idiom] if something comes naturally to you, you are able to do it very easily & very well.

<sup>171</sup>**commit** [v] **1.** [transitive] **commit a crime, etc.** to do something wrong or illegal; **2.** [transitive] **commit suicide** to kill yourself deliberately; **3.** [transitive, often passive] to promise that you will definitely do something or keep to an agreement or arrangement; **4.** [transitive] **commit yourself (to something)** to give an opinion or make a decision publicly so that it is then difficult to change it; **5.** [intransitive] **commit (to somebody/something)** to be completely loyal to 1 person or organization or give your time & effort to your work or an activity; **6.** [transitive] **commit somebody/something (to something)** to spend resources such as money, people or time on something/somebody; **7.** [transitive, usually passive] **commit somebody to something** to order somebody to be sent to a hospital; **8.** [transitive] **commit something to memory** to learn something well enough to remember it exactly.

<sup>172</sup>**stiff** [a] (**stiffer, stiffest**) **1.** firm & difficult to bend or move; **2.** when a person or part of their body is stiff, their muscles hurt when they move them; **3.** more difficult or severe than usual; **4.** (of a person or their behavior) not friendly or relaxed.

<sup>173</sup>**ultimately** [adv] **1.** in the end; finally; **2.** at the most basic & important level, SYNONYM: **basically, essentially**.

<sup>174</sup>**baggage** [n] [uncountable] **1.** bags, cases, etc. that contain somebody's clothes & things when they are traveling, SYNONYM: **luggage**; **2.** the equipment that an army carries with it; **3.** the beliefs & attitudes that somebody has as a result of their past experiences.

<sup>175</sup>**transaction** [n] **1.** [countable] a piece of business that is done between people, especially an act of buying or selling, SYNONYM: **deal**; **2.** [uncountable] **transaction of something (formal)** the process of doing something.

<sup>176</sup>**warmth** [n] [uncountable] **1.** the state or quality of being warm, rather than hot or cold; **2.** enthusiasm, affection or kindness.

<sup>177</sup>**gimmick** [n] (*often disapproving*) an unusual trick or unnecessary device that is intended to attract attention or to persuade people to buy something.

<sup>178</sup>**personalize** [v] (*British English also personalise*) **1.** **personalize something** to cause an issue, argument, etc. to become concerned with particular people or feelings rather than with general matters; **2.** **personalize something** to design or change something so that it is suitable for the needs of a particular person; **3.** **personalize something** to mark something in some way to show that it belongs to a particular person.

## 2.2 Simplicity

<sup>179</sup> “Clutter<sup>180</sup> is the disease<sup>181</sup> of American writing. we are a society strangling<sup>182</sup> in unnecessary<sup>183</sup> words, circular<sup>184</sup> constructions<sup>185</sup>, pompous<sup>186</sup> frills<sup>187</sup> & meaningless<sup>188</sup> jargon<sup>189</sup>.”

Who can understand the clotted<sup>190</sup> language of everyday American commerce<sup>191</sup>: the memo<sup>192</sup>, the corporation<sup>193</sup> report<sup>194</sup>, the business<sup>195</sup> letter<sup>196</sup>, the notice<sup>197</sup> from the bank explaining its latest “simplified<sup>198</sup>” statement? What member

<sup>179</sup>**simplicity** [n] [uncountable] **1.** the quality of being easy to understand or use; **2.** (*approving*) the quality of being natural & plain or not complicated in design.

<sup>180</sup>**clutter** [v] **clutter something (up) (with something/somebody)** to fill a place or area with too many things, so that it is untidy; [n] [uncountable, singular] (*disapproving*) a lot of things in an untidy state, especially things that are not necessary or are not being used; a lack of order, SYNONYM: **mess**.

<sup>181</sup>**disease** [n] [uncountable, countable] an illness of the body in humans, animals or plants.

<sup>182</sup>**strangle** [v] **1. strangle somebody** to kill somebody by pressing their throat & neck hard, especially with your fingers; **2. strangle something** to prevent something from growing or developing.

<sup>183</sup>**unnecessary** [a] **1.** not needed, OPPOSITE; **2.** more than is needed, SYNONYM: **excessive, unjustified**.

<sup>184</sup>**circular** [a] **1.** shaped like a circle; round; **2.** moving around in a circle; **3.** (of an argument or a theory) using an idea or a statement to prove something which is then used to prove the idea or statement at the beginning.

<sup>185</sup>**construction** [n] **1.** [uncountable] the process or method of building or making something, especially roads, bridges, buildings or machines; **2.** [uncountable, countable] **construction (of something)** the act or process of creating something from ideas, opinions & knowledge; something created in this way; **3.** [uncountable] the way that something has been built or made; **4.** [countable] the way in which words are used together & arranged to form a sentence or a phrase; **5.** [countable] (*formal*) the way in which words, statements or actions are understood by somebody, SYNONYM: **interpretation**.

<sup>186</sup>**pompous** [a] (*disapproving*) showing that you think you are more important than other people, especially by using long & formal words, SYNONYM: **pretentious**.

<sup>187</sup>**frill** [n] **1.** a narrow piece of cloth with a lot of folds that is attached to the edge of a dress, curtain, etc. to decorate it, SYNONYM: **ruffle**; **2.** [usually plural] things that are not necessary but are added to make something more attractive or interesting.

<sup>188</sup>**meaningless** [a] **1.** not having a meaning that is easy to understand; **2.** without any purpose or reason & therefore not worth doing or having; **3. meaningless (to somebody/something)** not considered important, SYNONYM: **irrelevant**.

<sup>189</sup>**jargon** [n] [uncountable] (*disapproving*) words or expressions that are used by a particular profession or group of people, & are difficult for others to understand.

<sup>190</sup>**clot** [n] a lump that is formed when a liquid, especially blood, dries or becomes thicker; [v] [intransitive] when blood clots, it forms thick lumps.

<sup>191</sup>**commerce** [n] [uncountable] trade, especially between countries; the buying & selling of goods & services.

<sup>192</sup>**memo** [n] (plural **memos**) (*also formal memorandum*) an official note from 1 person to another in the same organization.

<sup>193</sup>**corporation** [n] (abbr., **Corp.**) a large business company, or a group of companies that is recognized by law as a single unit.

<sup>194</sup>**report** [v] **1.** [transitive, often passive, intransitive] to tell people that something has happened or exists, or to provide other information about something; **2.** [transitive, often passive, intransitive] to present information in a newspaper, on television, etc. about something that has happened; **3.** [transitive] to tell a person in authority about a crime or about something else that is wrong; **4.** [intransitive] to go somewhere & tell somebody in authority that you have arrived; **report back (to somebody/something) (on something)** [phrasal verb] to provide information for others, after doing something or after returning somewhere; **report to somebody** (not used in the progressive tenses) (*business*) [phrasal verb] if you report to somebody, they are in charge of you or are responsible for your work; [n] **1.** a written document in which a particular situation or subject is examined or discussed; **2.** a statement that something has happened or exists; a piece of information about something; **3.** information that is presented in a newspaper, on television, etc. about something that has happened; **4.** (*British English*) (*North American English*) **report card** a written document about a student's progress at school.

<sup>195</sup>**business** [n] **1.** [uncountable] the activity of making, buying, selling or supplying goods or services for money; **2.** [countable] a commercial organization such as a company, shop or factory. In this meaning, the word **business** often describes a small or medium-sized organization; the word **company** can be used for both small & large organizations.; **3.** [uncountable] work or another activity that is part of your job & not done for pleasure or for any other reason; **4.** [uncountable] the amount of work done by a company, etc.; the rate, volume, value or quality of this work; **5.** [countable] a particular area of commercial activity; **6.** [uncountable] the fact of a person or people buying goods or services from a business; **7.** [uncountable] something that concerns a particular person or organization; **8.** [uncountable] important matters that need to be dealt with or discussed; **9.** [singular] (usually with an adjective) **business (of something/of doing something)** a situation or a series of events; **go about your business** [idiom] to do the things that you normally do; **out of business** [idiom] having stopped operating as a business because there is no more money or work available.

<sup>196</sup>**letter** [n] **1.** [countable] a message that is written down or printed on paper & usually put in an envelope & sent to somebody; **2.** [countable] a written or printed sign representing a sound used in speech; **3. (the letter of something)** [singular] the exact words of a rule or statement rather than its general meaning; **to the letter** [idiom] doing exactly what somebody/something says, paying attention to every detail.

<sup>197</sup>**notice** [v] **1.** (not usually used in the progressive tenses) to see or hear somebody/something; to become aware of somebody/something; **2.** (not usually used in the progressive tenses) to pay attention to somebody/something; [n] **1.** [uncountable] the fact of somebody paying attention to somebody/something or knowing about something; **2.** [uncountable] information or a warning given in advance of something that is going to happen; **3.** [uncountable, countable] a formal letter or statement saying that you will or must do something, e.g. leave your job at the end of a particular period of time; **4.** [countable] a small advertisement or announcement in a newspaper or magazine, or on a website; **5.** [countable] a sheet of paper or an email giving written information about an event, etc.; **6.** [countable] a board or sign giving information, an instruction or a warning.

<sup>198</sup>**simplify** [v] **1. simplify something** to make something less complicated, or easier to do or understand; **2. simplify something (to something)** (*mathematics*) to rewrite an equation in its simplest form by, e.g., gathering common terms together & canceling repeated terms where appropriate.



of an insurance<sup>199</sup> or medical<sup>200</sup> plan can decipher<sup>201</sup> the brochure<sup>202</sup> explaining his costs & benefits<sup>203</sup>? What father or mother can put together a child's toy from the instructions<sup>204</sup> on the box? Our national<sup>205206</sup> tendency<sup>207</sup> is to inflate<sup>208</sup> & thereby<sup>209</sup> sound important. The airline<sup>210</sup> pilot<sup>211</sup> who announces<sup>212</sup> that he is presently<sup>213</sup> anticipating<sup>214</sup> experiencing<sup>215</sup> considerable<sup>216</sup> precipitation<sup>217</sup> wouldn't think of saying it may rain. The sentence is too simple – there must be something wrong with it.

But the secret of good writing is to strip<sup>218</sup> every sentence to its cleanest<sup>219</sup> components<sup>220</sup>. Every<sup>221</sup> word<sup>222</sup> that

<sup>199</sup>**insurance** [n] **1.** [uncountable, countable] an arrangement with a company in which you pay them regular amounts of money & they agree to pay the costs, e.g., if you die or are ill, or if you lose or damage something; **2.** [uncountable] the business of providing people with insurance; **3.** [uncountable] money paid by or to an insurance company; **4.** [uncountable, countable] **insurance (against something)** something you do to protect yourself against something bad happening in the future.

<sup>200</sup>**medical** [a] [usually before noun] **1.** connected with the science or practice of medicine; **2.** connected with medicine as opposed to surgery, psychiatry, etc.

<sup>201</sup>**decipher** [v] **1. decipher something** to convert something written in code into normal language; **2. decipher something** to succeed in finding the meaning of something that is difficult to read or understand.

<sup>202</sup>**brochure** [n] a small magazine or book containing pictures & information about something or advertising something.

<sup>203</sup>**benefit** [n] **1.** [countable, uncountable] a helpful & useful effect that something has; an advantage that something provides; **2.** [uncountable, countable] (*British English*) money provided by the government to people who need financial help because they are unemployed, sick, etc.; [v] **1.** [intransitive] to be in a better position because of something; **2.** [transitive] **benefit somebody/something** to be useful or provide an advantage or somebody/something.

<sup>204</sup>**instruction** [n] **1. (instructions)** [plural] detailed information on how to do or use something, SYNONYM: **direction**; **2.** [countable, usually plural] something that somebody tells you to do, SYNONYM: **order**; **3.** [countable] (*computing*) a code in a program that tells a computer to perform a particular operation; **4.** [uncountable] the act of teaching something to somebody.

<sup>205</sup>**national** [a] [usually before noun] **1.** connected with a particular nation; shared by a whole nation; **2.** owned, controlled or paid for by the government; [n] a citizen of a particular country.

<sup>206</sup>NQBH: 'natural' should be used here instead?

<sup>207</sup>**tendency** [n] (plural **tendencies**) **1.** [countable] if somebody/something has a particular tendency, they are likely to behave or act in a particular way; **2.** [countable] a new custom that is starting to develop, SYNONYM: **trend**; **3.** [countable + singular or plural verb] (*British English*) a group within a larger political group, whose views are more extreme than those of the rest of the group.

<sup>208</sup>**inflate** [v] **1.** [transitive] **inflate something** to make something appear to be more important or impressive than it really is; **2.** [transitive] **inflate something** to increase the amount of something; **3.** [transitive, intransitive] **inflate (something)** to fill something with gas or air; to become filled with gas or air, OPPOSITE: **deflate**.

<sup>209</sup>**thereby** [adv] (*formal*) used to introduce the result of the action or situation mentioned.

<sup>210</sup>**airline** [n] [countable + singular or plural verb] a company that provides regular flights to take passengers & goods to different places.

<sup>211</sup>**pilot** [n] a person who operates the controls of an aircraft, especially as a job; [a] [only before noun] done on a small scale in order to see if something is successful enough to do on a large scale; [v] **pilot something** to test a new product, idea, etc. with a few people or in a small area before it is introduced everywhere.

<sup>212</sup>**announce** [v] **1.** to make a formal public statement about a fact, event or intention; **2.** to say something in a loud &/or serious way.

<sup>213</sup>**presently** [adv] **1.** (usually used before the word or sentence that it refers to) at the time you are speaking or writing; now, SYNONYM: **currently**; **2.** (usually used at the end of a sentence or clause) at a later time, e.g. at a later point in the text that you are writing.

<sup>214</sup>**anticipate** [v] **1.** to expect or predict something; **2.** to see what might happen in the future & take action to prepare for it; **3. anticipate something** to think with pleasure & excitement about something that is going to happen; **4. anticipate something** to come before & influence something else that is similar; to be a sign of what is going to happen.

<sup>215</sup>**experience** [n] **1.** [uncountable] the knowledge & skill that you have gained through doing something for a period of time; the process of gaining this; **2.** [uncountable] the things that have happened to you that affect the way you think & behave; **3.** [countable] an event or activity that affects you in some way; **4. (the ... experience)** [singular] events or knowledge shared by all the members of a particular group in society, that affects the way they think & behave; [v] **1. experience something** to have a particular situation affect you or happen to you; **2. experience something** to have a particular emotion or physical feeling.

<sup>216</sup>**considerable** [a] great in amount, size or importance.

<sup>217</sup>**precipitation** [n] **1.** [uncountable] (*specialist*) rain, snow, etc. that falls; the amount of this that falls; **2.** [uncountable, countable] **precipitation (of something)** (*chemistry*) a chemical process in which solid material is separated from a liquid.

<sup>218</sup>**strip** [n] **1.** a long narrow piece of paper, metal, cloth, etc.; **2.** a long narrow area of land, sea, etc.; [v] **1.** [transitive] to remove all of a particular type of thing, person or quality from a structure, place, organization, etc.; **2.** [transitive] **strip somebody of something** to take away property, honors or rights from somebody, as a punishment; **3.** [transitive] **strip A (off/from B)** to remove a layer from something, especially so that it is completely exposed; **4.** [intransitive, transitive] to take off all or most of your clothes or another person's clothes; **strip something away** [phrasal verb] **1.** to remove a layer from something; **2.** to remove anything that is not true or necessary.

<sup>219</sup>**clean** [a] **cleaner, cleanest** **1.** not dirty; **2.** not containing or producing harmful or unpleasant substances; [v] [transitive, intransitive] **clean (something)** to make something free from dirt or dust; **clean something up** | **clean up** [phrasal verb] to remove dirt or pollution from somewhere or something.

<sup>220</sup>**component** [n] **1.** 1 or several parts that combine together to make a system, machine or substance; **2.** a necessary feature or part of something.

<sup>221</sup>**every** [determiner] **1.** used with singular nouns to refer to all the members of a group of things or people; **2.** all possible; **3.** used to say how often something happens or is done or how common something is; **every other** [idiom] if something happens every other day, night, etc. it happens on 1 day, etc. but not the next, SYNONYM: **alternate**.

<sup>222</sup>**word** [n] **1.** [countable] a single unit of language which means something & can be spoken or written; **2.** [countable] a thing that you say; a remark or statement; **3.** [singular] a promise that you will do something or that something will happen or is true; **4.** [singular] a piece of information or news; [v] [often passive] **word something** to write or say something using particular words.

serves<sup>223</sup> no function<sup>224</sup>, every long word that could be a short word, every adverb<sup>225</sup> that carries<sup>226</sup> the same meaning that's already in the verb, every passive<sup>227</sup> construction that leaves the reader unsure<sup>228</sup> of who is doing what – these are the thousand & 1 adulterants<sup>229 230</sup> that weaken<sup>231</sup> the strength<sup>232</sup> of a sentence<sup>233</sup>. & they usually occur<sup>234</sup> in proportion<sup>235</sup> to education<sup>236</sup> & rank<sup>237</sup>.

<sup>223</sup>**serve** [v] **1.** [intransitive, transitive] to have a particular effect, use or result; **2.** [transitive] to be useful to somebody in achieving something; **3.** [transitive] to provide an area or a group of people with a product or service; **4.** [intransitive, transitive] to work or perform duties for a person, an organization, a country, etc.; **5.** [transitive] **serve something** to spend a period of time in prison; **6.** [transitive] to give somebody food or drink, e.g. at a restaurant or during a meal; **7.** [transitive] (*law*) to give or send somebody an official document, especially one that orders them to appear in court; **serve something up** [phrasal verb] to give, offer or provide something.

<sup>224</sup>**function** [n] **1.** [countable, uncountable] the action or purpose that somebody/something has in a particular situation; the ability that somebody/something has to perform a particular job or role; **2.** [countable] **function (of something)** (*mathematics*) a quantity whose value depends on the varying values of others; **3.** [countable] a part of a computer program or system that performs a basic operation; **4.** [countable] a social event or official ceremony; **be a function of something** [idiom] to be something that depends on something else; [v] [intransitive] to work in the correct way; to work in a particular way, SYNONYM: **operate**; **function as somebody/something** [phrasal verb] to perform the action or the job of the thing or person mentioned.

<sup>225</sup>**adverb** [n] (*grammar*) a word that adds more information about place, time, manner, cause or degree to a verb, an adjective, a phrase or another adverb.

<sup>226</sup>**carry** [v] **1.** to support the weight of somebody/something & take them/it from place to place; to take somebody/something from 1 place to another; **2. carry something** to have something with you & take it wherever you go; **3.** to contain & direct the flow of water, electricity, etc.; **4. carry something** to contain something such as information, a message or a signal & be able to pass it from 1 place, person, etc. to another; **5. carry something** if a person, an animal, etc. carries a disease, they are infected with it & might spread it to others although they might not become ill themselves; **6. carry something** to support the weight of something; **7. carry something** to have some as a quality, feature or possible result; **8. carry something** to accept responsibility for something; to suffer the results of something; **9. carry something/somebody + adv./prep.** to take something/somebody to a particular point or in a particular direction; **10.** [usually passive] to approve of something by more people voting for it than against it; **11. carry something** (of a newspaper or broadcast) to publish or broadcast a particular story.

<sup>227</sup>**passive** [a] **1.** accepting what happens or what people do without trying to change anything or oppose them, OPPOSITE: **active**; **2.** (*grammar*) connected with the form of a verb used when the subject is affected by the action of the verb; [n] (also **passive voice**) (often **the passive (voice)**) [singular] (*grammar*) the form of a verb used when the subject is affected by the action of the verb.

<sup>228</sup>**unsure** [a] [not before noun] not certain of something; having doubts.

<sup>229</sup>**adulterate** [v] [often passive] to make food or drink less pure by adding another substance to it, SYNONYM: **contaminate**.

<sup>230</sup>**adulteration** [n] [uncountable] the action of making food or drink less pure by adding another substance to it, SYNONYM: **contamination**.

<sup>231</sup>**weaken** [v] **1.** [transitive, intransitive] **weaken (somebody/something)** to make somebody/something less strong or powerful; to become less strong or powerful, OPPOSITE: **strengthen**; **2.** [transitive, intransitive] **weaken (something)** to make something less physically strong; to become less physically strong, OPPOSITE: **strengthen**; **3.** [intransitive, transitive] to become less determined or certain about something; to make somebody less determined or certain, OPPOSITE: **strengthen**.

<sup>232</sup>**strength** [n] **1.** [uncountable, singular] the quality that a person or animal has of being physically strong, OPPOSITE: **weakness**; **2.** [uncountable] the quality that an object or substance has of being strong & not easily broken or damaged, OPPOSITE: **weakness**; **3.** [countable] a quality or ability that a person or thing has that gives them an advantage, OPPOSITE: **weakness, limitation**; **4.** [uncountable] the power & influence that somebody/something has; **5.** [uncountable] how strong a natural force is; **6.** [uncountable, countable] how strong a drug, chemical or drink is, SYNONYM: **concentration**; **7.** [uncountable] **strength (of something)** how clear & reliable an argument, evidence or connection is; **8.** [uncountable, singular] the quality of being brave & determined in a difficult situation; **9.** [uncountable] **strength (of something)** how strong or deeply felt an opinion or feeling is; **10.** [uncountable] the number of people in a group, a team or an organization; **on the strength of something** [idiom] because somebody has been influenced or persuaded by something.

<sup>233</sup>**sentence** [n] **1.** [countable] (*grammar*) a set of words expressing a statement, a question or an order, usually containing a subject & a verb. In written English, sentences begin with a capital letter & end with a full stop (.) or a question mark (?); **2.** [countable, uncountable] the punishment given by a court; [v] [often passive] to say officially in court that somebody is to receive a particular punishment.

<sup>234</sup>**occur** [v] **1.** [intransitive] to happen; **2.** [intransitive] + **adv./prep.** to exist or be found somewhere; **occur to somebody** (of an idea or thought) [phrasal verb] to come into your mind.

<sup>235</sup>**proportion** [n] **1.** [countable + singular or plural verb] a part or share of a whole; **2.** [uncountable] the relationship of 1 thing to another in size, amount or number, SYNONYM: **ratio**; **3. (proportions)** [plural] the size & shape of 1 part of something in relation to the other parts; **4.** [uncountable] the correct relationship in size between 1 thing & another or between the parts of a whole.

<sup>236</sup>**education** [n] **1.** [uncountable, singular] a process of teaching, training & learning, especially in schools or colleges, to improve knowledge & develop skills; **2.** [uncountable] a particular kind of teaching or training; **3. (Education)** [uncountable] the institutions or people involved in teaching & training; **4. (usually Education)** [uncountable] the subject of study that deals with how to teach.

<sup>237</sup>**rank** [n] **1.** [countable, usually plural, uncountable] the position that somebody has in a particular organization or society; **2. (the ranks)** [plural] the members of particular group or organization; **3.** [countable] **rank (of something)** the position that somebody has in the army, navy, police, etc.; **4.** [singular] the degree to which somebody/something is higher or lower on a scale of quality, important, success, etc.; [v] [transitive, intransitive] (not used in the progressive tenses) to give somebody/something a particular position on a scale according to quality, importance, success, etc.; to have a position of this kind.



During<sup>238</sup> the 1960s the president<sup>239</sup> of my university<sup>240</sup> wrote a letter to mollify<sup>241</sup> the alumni<sup>242</sup> after a spell<sup>243</sup> of campus<sup>244</sup> unrest<sup>245</sup>. “You are probably aware<sup>246</sup>,” he began, “that we have been experiencing very considerable potentially<sup>247</sup> explosive<sup>248</sup> expressions<sup>249</sup> of dissatisfaction<sup>250</sup> on issues<sup>251</sup> only partially<sup>252</sup> related<sup>253</sup>.” He meant that the students had been hassling<sup>254</sup> them about different things. I was far more upset by the president’s English than by the students’ potentially explosive expressions of dissatisfaction. I would have preferred the presidential<sup>255</sup> approach taken by FRANKLIN D. ROOSEVELT when he tried to convert<sup>256</sup> into English his own government’s<sup>257</sup> memos<sup>258</sup>, such as this blackout<sup>259</sup> order<sup>260</sup> of 1942:

<sup>238</sup>**during** [prep] **1.** all through a period of time; **2.** at some point in a period of time. **During** is used to say when something happens; **for** answers the question ‘how long?’.

<sup>239</sup>**president** [n] **1.** (**President**) the elected leader of a republic; **2.** (**President**) **president (of something)** the person in charge of some organizations, clubs, colleges, etc.; **3.** **president (of something)** (*especially North American English*) the person in charge of a bank or commercial organization.

<sup>240</sup>**university** [n] (plural **universities**) [countable, uncountable] (abbr., **Univ.**) an institution at the highest level of education where you can study for a degree or do research.

<sup>241</sup>**mollify** [v] (*formal*) **mollify somebody** to make somebody feel less angry or upset, SYNONYM: **placate**.

<sup>242</sup>**alumni** [n] [plural] (*especially North American English*) the former male & female students of a school, college or university.

<sup>243</sup>**spell** [v] **1.** [transitive, intransitive] **spell (something)** to write or say the letters of a word in the correct order; to form words correctly from individual letters; **2.** [transitive] **spell something** (of letters) to form a word when they are put together in a particular order; **3.** [transitive] **spell something (for somebody/something)** to have something, usually something bad, as a result; to mean something, usually something bad; **spell something out** [phrasal verb] to explain something in a simple, clear way; [n] **1.** [countable] a short period of time during which something lasts for somebody does something; **2.** [singular] a quality that somebody/something has that gives them control or influence over people as if in a magical way; **cast a spell (on/over somebody/something)** [idiom] to use words that are thought to be magic & have the power to change somebody/something; to have a powerful influence over somebody/something.

<sup>244</sup>**campus** [n] the buildings of a university or college & the land around them.

<sup>245</sup>**unrest** [n] [uncountable] a situation in which people are angry & likely to protest against the government or their employers, SYNONYM: **disorder**.

<sup>246</sup>**aware** [a] **1.** [not before noun] knowing or realizing that something is true or exists, OPPOSITE: **unaware**; **2.** (used with an adverb) concerned & knowing a lot about a particular situation or development.

<sup>247</sup>**potentially** [adv] possibly going to develop or be developed into something, especially something bad.

<sup>248</sup>**explosive** [a] **1.** exploding; easily able or likely to explode; **2.** likely to cause violence or strong feelings of anger; **3.** increasing suddenly & quickly.

<sup>249</sup>**expression** [n] **1.** [countable, uncountable] things that people say, write or do in order to show their feelings, opinions & ideas; **2.** [countable, uncountable] a look on a person’s face that shows their thoughts or feelings; **3.** [countable] a word or phrase; **4.** [countable] (*mathematics*) a group of signs that represent an idea or a quantity; **5.** [uncountable] (*biochemistry*) the presence of a gene product in a cell, which shows the gene is there.

<sup>250</sup>**dissatisfaction** [n] [uncountable, countable] a feeling that you are not pleased or satisfied, because something is not as good as you expected, OPPOSITE: **satisfaction**.

<sup>251</sup>**issue** [n] **1.** [countable] an important topic that people are discussing or arguing about; **2.** [countable] (often **issues** [plural]) a problem, concern or difficulty; **3.** [countable] 1 of a regular series of magazines or newspapers; **4.** [countable, uncountable] something that is supplied or made available for people to buy or use; the act of supplying or making available things for people to buy or use; **5.** [uncountable] (*law*) children of your own; [v] **1.** to make something known formally; to make something available publicly; **2.** [often passive] to give something to somebody, especially officially; **3.** **issue something** to start a legal process against somebody, especially by means of an official document; **4.** **issue something** to produce new stamps, coins, shares, etc. for sale to the public; **issue from something** [phrasal verb] to come out of something.

<sup>252</sup>**partially** [adv] partly; not completely.

<sup>253</sup>**related** [a] **1.** connected with something/somebody in some way, OPPOSITE: **unrelated**; **2.** belonging to the same group, OPPOSITE: **unrelated**; **3.** **related (to something/somebody)** connected by a family relationship or by marriage, OPPOSITE: **unrelated**.

<sup>254</sup>**hassle** [v] (*informal*) **hassle somebody (for something/to do something)** to annoy somebody or cause them trouble, especially by asking them to do something many times, SYNONYM: **bother**.

<sup>255</sup>**presidential** [a] connected with a president.

<sup>256</sup>**convert** [v] **1.** [transitive, intransitive] to change the form, use or character of something; to change from 1 form, purposes or system to another; **2.** [intransitive] **convert into/to something** to be able to change or be changed from 1 form or purpose to another; **3.** [intransitive, transitive] to change or make somebody change their religion, beliefs or way of life; **convert somebody to something** [phrasal verb] to persuade somebody to support a particular idea; [n] a person who has changed their religion, beliefs or way of life.

<sup>257</sup>**government** [n] **1.** [countable + singular or plural verb, uncountable] (often **the Government**) (abbr., **govt**) the group of people & the institutions connected with them that are responsible for controlling a country or state; **2.** [uncountable] a particular system or method of controlling a country; **3.** [uncountable] the activity or manner of controlling a country.

<sup>258</sup>**memo** [n] (plural **memos**) (*also formal memorandum*) an official note from 1 person to another in the same organization.

<sup>259</sup>**blackout** [n] **1.** a period when there is no light as a result of an electrical power failure; **2.** a situation when the government or the police will not allow any news or information on a particular subject to be given to the public; **3.** [usually singular] a period of time during a war when all lights must be put out or covered at night, so that they cannot be seen by an enemy attacking by air; **4.** [usually plural] (*British English*) a piece of material that covers windows to stop light being seen from outside, or light from outside from coming into a room; **5.** a temporary loss of consciousness, sight or memory.

<sup>260</sup>**order** [n] **1.** [uncountable, countable] the way in which people or things are placed or arranged in relation to each other; **2.** [uncountable] the state in which everything is in the right place or something is as it should be, OPPOSITE: **disorder**; **3.** [uncountable] the state that exists when people obey laws, rules or authority; **4.** [countable] something that somebody is told to do by somebody in authority; **5.** [countable] a written instruction by a court or judge; **6.** [countable, uncountable] a request to make or supply goods; **7.** [countable, usually singular] the way that a society, the world, etc. is arranged, with its system of rules & customs; **8.** [singular] a particular quality or degree; **9.** [countable] **order (of something)** (*biology*) a group into which animals, plants, etc. that are related are divided, smaller than a class & larger than a family;

**Example 2.1.** *Such preparations<sup>261</sup> shall be made as will completely<sup>262</sup> obscure<sup>263</sup> all Federal<sup>264</sup> buildings<sup>265</sup> & non-Federal buildings occupied<sup>266 267</sup> by the Federal government during an air raid<sup>268</sup> for any period of time from visibility<sup>269</sup> by reason of internal<sup>270</sup> or external<sup>271</sup> illumination<sup>272</sup>.*

*“Tell them,” Roosevelt said, “that in buildings where they have to keep the work going to put something across the windows.”*

Simplify<sup>273</sup>, simplify. Thoreau said it, as we are so often reminded<sup>274</sup>, & no American writer more consistently<sup>275</sup> practiced what he preached<sup>276</sup>. Open *Walden*<sup>277</sup> to any page & you will find a man saying in a plain & orderly<sup>278</sup> way what is on his mind:

**Example 2.2.** *I went to the woods because I wished to live deliberately<sup>279</sup>, to front only the essential<sup>280</sup> facts of life, & see if I could not learn what it had to teach, & not, when I came to die, discover that I had not lived.*

How can the rest of us achieve such enviable<sup>281</sup> freedom<sup>282</sup> from clutter<sup>283</sup>? The answer is to clear our heads of clutter.

[v] **1.** to use your position of authority to tell somebody to do something or say that something must happen; **2. order something (from somebody/something)** to ask for goods to be made or supplied; to ask for a service to be provided; **3. order something** to organize or arrange something.

<sup>261</sup>**preparation** [n] **1.** [uncountable] the act or process of making something/somebody ready or of getting ready for something; **2.** [countable, usually plural] things that you do not get ready for something or to make something ready; **3.** [countable] a substance that has been specially prepared for use as a medicine, cosmetic, etc.

<sup>262</sup>**completely** [adv] (used to emphasize the following word or phrase) in every way possible, SYNONYM: **totally**.

<sup>263</sup>**obscure** [v] to cover something; to make it difficult to see, hear or understand something; [a] **1.** not well known, SYNONYM: **unknown**; **2.** difficult to understand.

<sup>264</sup>**federal** [a] **1.** having a system of government in which the individual states of a country have control over their own affairs, but are controlled by a central government for national decisions; **2.** (within a federal system, e.g. the US & Canada) connected with national government rather than the local government of an individual state.

<sup>265</sup>**building** [n] **1.** [countable] a structure with a roof & walls, such as a house or factory; **2.** [uncountable] the process & work of building.

<sup>266</sup>**occupied** [a] **1.** [not before noun] busy; **2.** [not before noun] being used, OPPOSITE: **unoccupied**; **3.** (of a country, etc.) controlled by people from another country, etc., using military force.

<sup>267</sup>**occupy** [v] **1. occupy something** to fill or use a space, area or amount of time, SYNONYM: **take up something**; **2. occupy something** to live or work in a room, house or building; **3. occupy something** to enter a place in a large group & take control of it, especially by military force; **4. occupy something** to have an official job or position, SYNONYM: **hold**; **5. occupy something** to be in or at a particular position in a system, SYNONYM: **hold**; **6.** to fill your time or keep you busy doing something.

<sup>268</sup>**air raid** [n] an attack by a number of aircraft dropping many bombs on a place.

<sup>269</sup>**visibility** [n] [uncountable] **1.** how far or well you can see, especially as affected by the light or the weather; **2.** the degree to which something attracts attention; the fact or state of being easy to see.

<sup>270</sup>**internal** [a] **1.** [usually before noun] connected with the inside of something, OPPOSITE: **external**; **2.** [only before noun] connected with the inside of a person's or animal's body, OPPOSITE: **external**; **3.** involving or concerning only the people who are part of a particular organization rather than people from outside it, OPPOSITE: **external**; **4.** [usually before noun] happening or existing within a country or region rather than involving other countries or regions, SYNONYM: **domestic**, OPPOSITE: **external**; **5.** [only before noun] coming from within a thing itself rather than from outside it, OPPOSITE: **external**; **6.** happening or existing in a person's mind.

<sup>271</sup>**external** [a] **1.** coming from outside the place, organization or situation that is affected. The **external validity** of a study is the degree to which its findings apply beyond its own research context. OPPOSITE: **internal**; **2.** existing outside a place, an organization or a particular situation; connected with the outside of something, OPPOSITE: **internal**; **3.** connected with foreign countries, OPPOSITE: **internal**.

<sup>272</sup>**illumination** [n] **1.** [uncountable, countable] light or a place that might come from; **2.** [uncountable] understanding or explanation of something.

<sup>273</sup>**simplify** [v] **1. simplify something** to make something less complicated, or easier to do or understand; **2. simplify something (to something)** (*mathematics*) to rewrite an equation in its simplest form by, e.g., gathering common terms together & canceling repeated terms where appropriate.

<sup>274</sup>**remind** [v] to help somebody remember something, especially something important that they must do; **remind somebody of somebody/something** [phrasal verb] to make somebody remember or think about another person, place or thing by being similar to them in some way.

<sup>275</sup>**consistently** [adv] always in the same way; the following the same pattern or standard.

<sup>276</sup>**preach** [v] **1.** [intransitive, transitive] to give a religious talk in a public place, especially in a church during a service; **2.** [transitive, intransitive] to tell people about a particular religion, way of life, system, etc. in order to persuade them to accept it; **3.** [intransitive] (*disapproving*) to give somebody advice on moral standards, behavior, etc., especially in a way that they find annoying or boring; **practice what you preach** [idiom] to do the things yourself that you tell other people to do.

<sup>277</sup>**Walden** the best-known book by the US writer HENRY DAVID THOREAU. Its full title is *Walden, or Life in the Woods*.

<sup>278</sup>**orderly** [a] **1.** arranged or organized in a neat, careful & logical way; **2.** behaving well; peaceful.

<sup>279</sup>**deliberately** [adv] on purpose rather than by accident, SYNONYM: **intentionally**.

<sup>280</sup>**essential** [a] **1.** completely necessary; extremely important in a particular situation or for a particular activity, SYNONYM: **vital**; **2.** [only before noun] connected with the most important aspect or basic nature of somebody/something, SYNONYM: **fundamental**; **3.** (of an amino acid or fatty acid) required for normal growth but not produced in the body, & therefore necessary in the diet; [n] [usually plural] **1.** something that is needed in a particular situation or in order to do a particular thing; **2. essential (of something)** an important basic fact or piece of knowledge about a subject.

<sup>281</sup>**enviable** [a] something that is enviable is the sort of thing that is good & that other people want to have too, OPPOSITE: **unenviable**.

<sup>282</sup>**freedom** [n] **1.** [uncountable, countable] **freedom (of something)** the right to do or say what you want without anyone stopping you; **2.** [uncountable] the state of being able to do what you want, without anything stopping you; **3.** [uncountable] the state of not being a prisoner or slave; **4.** [uncountable] **freedom (from something)** the state of not being ruled by a foreign country; **5.** [uncountable] **freedom from something** the state of not being affected by the thing mentioned; **freedom of/room for manoeuvre** [idiom] the chance to change the way that something happens & influence decisions that are made.

<sup>283</sup>**clutter** [v] **clutter something (up) (with something/somebody)** to fill a place or area with too many things, so that it is untidy; [n]

Clear thinking becomes clear writing; one can't exist without the other. It's impossible<sup>284</sup> for a muddy<sup>285</sup> thinker<sup>286</sup> to write good English. He may get away with it for a paragraph or 2, but soon the reader will be lost, & there's no sin so grave<sup>287</sup>, for the reader will not easily be lured<sup>288</sup> back.

Who is this elusive<sup>289</sup> creature<sup>290</sup>, the reader? The reader is someone with an attention span of about 30 seconds – a person assailed<sup>291</sup> by many forces competing for attention. At 1 time those forces were relatively<sup>292</sup> few: newspapers, magazines, radio, spouse, children, pets. Today they also include a galaxy<sup>293</sup> of electronic devices for receiving<sup>294</sup> entertainment<sup>295</sup> & information – television<sup>296</sup>, VCRs<sup>297</sup>, DVDs<sup>298</sup>, CDs<sup>299</sup>, video games, the Internet, e-mail, cell phones, BlackBerries, iPods<sup>300</sup> – as well as a fitness<sup>301</sup> program, a pool<sup>302</sup>, a lawn<sup>303</sup> & that most potent<sup>304</sup> of competitors<sup>305</sup>, sleep. The man or woman snoozing<sup>306</sup> in a chair with a magazine or a book is a person who was being given too much unnecessary trouble<sup>307</sup> by the writer.

[uncountable, singular] (*disapproving*) a lot of things in an untidy state, especially things that are not necessary or are not being used; a lack of order, SYNONYM: **mess**.

<sup>284</sup>**impossible** [a] **1.** that cannot exist or be done; not possible; **2. (the impossible)** [n] [singular] a thing that is or seems impossible; **3.** very difficult to deal with.

<sup>285</sup>**muddy** [a] (**muddier, muddiest**) **1.** full of or covered in mud; **2.** (of a liquid) containing mud; not clear; **3.** (of colors) not clear or bright; [v] **muddy something** to make something muddy.

<sup>286</sup>**thinker** [n] **1.** a person who thinks seriously, & often writes about important things, such as philosophy or science; **2.** a person who thinks in a particular way.

<sup>287</sup>**grave** [n] **1.** a place in the ground where a dead person is buried; **2.** [singular] (often **the grave**) death; a person's death; [a] [usually before noun] (**graver, gravest**) very serious; causing great worry.

<sup>288</sup>**lure** [v] (*disapproving*) **lure somebody (+ adv./prep.)** to persuade or trick somebody or go somewhere or to do something by promising them a reward, SYNONYM: **entice**; [n] **1.** [usually singular] **the lure of something** the attractive qualities of something; **2.** a thing that is used to attract fish or animals, so they they can be caught.

<sup>289</sup>**elusive** [a] difficult to find, define or achieve.

<sup>290</sup>**creature** [n] **1.** a living thing, real or imaginary, that can move around, such as an animal; **2.** a person, considered in a particular way; **3. creature of something/somebody** a person or organization that is considered to be under the complete control of another.

<sup>291</sup>**assail** [v] (*formal*) **1. assail somebody/something (with something)** to attack somebody/something violently, either physically or with words; **2.** [usually passive] to worry or upset somebody severely.

<sup>292</sup>**relatively** [adv] to a fairly large degree, especially in comparison with something else; **relatively speaking** [idiom] used when you are comparing something with all similar things.

<sup>293</sup>**galaxy** [n] (plural **galaxies**) any of the very large systems of stars, planets, gas & dust in space. **The Galaxy** refers to our own galaxy, containing our sun & its planets, seen as a bright band in the night sky, & also known as **the Milky Way**.

<sup>294</sup>**receive** [v] **1.** to get or accept something that is sent or given to you; **2.** to experience, suffer or be given a particular type of attention or treatment; **3.** [usually passive] to react to something new, in a particular way; **4.** to change broadcast signals into sounds or pictures on a television or other equipment; **5. receive somebody** to welcome or entertain a visitor; **6. receive somebody (into something)** (*formal*) to officially recognize & accept somebody as a member of a group.

<sup>295</sup>**entertainment** [n] **1.** [uncountable, countable] films, music, etc. used to entertain people; an example of this; **2.** [uncountable] **entertainment (of somebody)** the act of entertaining somebody.

<sup>296</sup>**television** [n] (abbr., **TV**) **1.** [uncountable] the system & business of broadcasting pictures & sounds using electronic signals & creating programmes for people to watch; **2.** [uncountable] the programmes that are broadcast on television; **3.** (also **television set**) [countable] a piece of electrical equipment with a screen on which people watch programmes that are broadcast.

<sup>297</sup>**VCR** [n] (especially North American English) a machine that was used, especially in the past, to play videos or to record programmes from a television (abbr. for 'video cassette recorder').

<sup>298</sup>**DVD** [n] [countable, uncountable] a disk on which data, especially photographs & video, can be stored, for use on a computer or **DVD player** (abbr. for 'digital versatile disc' or, originally, 'digital videodisc').

<sup>299</sup>**CD** [n] a small disc on which sound or information is recorded. CDs can be played or read on various types of machines, including CD players & computers (abbr. for 'compact disc').

<sup>300</sup>**iPod** [n] a brand o MP3 player that can store information taken from the Internet & that you carry with you, e.g. so that you can listen to music.

<sup>301</sup>**fitness** [n] [uncountable] **1.** the state of being physically healthy & strong; **2.** the state of being suitable or good enough for something.

<sup>302</sup>**pool** [n] **1.** a small area of still water, especially one that has formed naturally. A **swimming pool** is an area of water that has been created for people to swim in.; **2. pool (of something)** an amount of something that is available & can be used when needed. In biology, a **gene pool** is all of the genes that are available within breeding populations of a particular species of animal or plant.; **3. pool (of somebody/something)** a group of people, especially of people who are available for work when needed; [v] **1.** to put together information from different sources so that it can be considered together; **2. pool something** to put together money, resources, etc. from different people so that all of them can use it.

<sup>303</sup>**lawn** [n] **1.** [countable] an area of ground covered in short grass in a garden or park, or used for playing a game on; **2.** [uncountable] a type of fine cotton or linen cloth used for making clothes.

<sup>304</sup>**potent** [a] having great power or influence; having a strong effect on your body or mind, SYNONYM: **powerful**.

<sup>305</sup>**competitor** [n] **1.** a person or business that is competing to be more successful than another person or business; **2. competitor for something** a person, animal or organization that is competing to get something, with the result that somebody/something else may not be able to get it.

<sup>306</sup>**snooze** [v] [intransitive] (*informal*) to have a short, light sleep, especially during the way & usually not in bed; [n] **1.** [countable, usually singular] (*informal*) a short, light sleep, especially during the day & usually not in bed; **2.** [uncountable] (also **snooze button** [countable]) a control on a clock or phone that you press when you wake up, so that you can sleep a little longer & be woken up again after a short time.

<sup>307</sup>**trouble** [n] **1.** [uncountable, countable] a problem, worry, difficulty, etc.; a situation causing this; **2.** [uncountable] something that is wrong with a part of the body, machine, vehicle, etc.; **3.** [uncountable] a situation that is difficult or dangerous; a situation in which you can be criticized or punished; **4.** [uncountable] an angry or violent situation; **5.** [uncountable] extra work or work; [v] [often passive] **1. trouble somebody** to make somebody worried or unhappy; **2. trouble somebody** (of a medical problem) to cause pain or problems.

It won't do to say that the reader is too dumb<sup>308</sup> or too lazy<sup>309</sup> to keep pace with the train of thought. If the reader is lost, it's usually because the writer hasn't been careful enough. That carelessness<sup>310</sup> can take any number of forms. Perhaps a sentence is so excessively<sup>311</sup> cluttered that the reader, hacking<sup>312</sup> through the verbiage<sup>313</sup>, simply doesn't know what it means. Perhaps a sentence has been so shoddily<sup>314</sup> constructed that the reader could read it in several ways. Perhaps the writer has switched<sup>315</sup> pronouns in midsentence, or has switched tenses, so the reader loses track of who is talking or when the action took place. Perhaps Sentence B is not a logical<sup>316</sup> sequel<sup>317</sup> to Sentence A; the writer, in whose head the connection is clear, hasn't bothered<sup>318</sup> to provide the missing<sup>319</sup> link. Perhaps the writer has used a word incorrectly<sup>320</sup> by not taking the trouble to look it up.

Faced with such obstacles<sup>321</sup>, readers are at 1st tenacious<sup>322</sup>. They blame themselves – they obviously<sup>323</sup> missed something, & they go back over the mystifying<sup>324</sup> sentence, or over the whole paragraph, piecing<sup>325</sup> it out like an ancient<sup>326</sup> rune<sup>327</sup>, making guesses & moving on. But they won't do that for long. The writer is making them work too hard, & they will look for one who is better at the craft.

Writers must therefore constantly<sup>328</sup> ask: what am I trying to say? Surprisingly<sup>329</sup> often they don't know. Then they must look at what they have written & ask: have I said it? Is it clear to someone encountering the subject for the 1st time? If it's not, some fuzz<sup>330</sup> has worked its way into the machinery<sup>331</sup>. The clear writer is someone clearheaded<sup>332</sup> enough to see this stuff<sup>333</sup> or what it is: fuzz.

<sup>308</sup>**dumb** [a] (**dumber, dumbest**) **1.** (*especially North American English, informal*) stupid; **2.** (*old-fashioned, offensive*) unable to speak; **3.** temporarily not speaking or refusing to speak; [v] **dumb down** [phrasal verb] **dumb down** | **dumb something** ↔ **down** (*disapproving*) to make something less accurate or educational, & of worse quality, by trying to make it easier for people to understand.

<sup>309</sup>**lazy** [a] (**lazier, laziest**) **1.** (*disapproving*) unwilling to work or be active; doing as little as possible, SYNONYM: **idle**; **2.** not involving much energy or activity; slow & relaxed; **3.** (*disapproving*) showing a lack of effort or care; **4.** (*literary*) moving slowly, SYNONYM: **torpid**.

<sup>310</sup>**carelessness** [n] [uncountable] lack of attention & thought about what you are doing.

<sup>311</sup>**excessively** [adv] to a much greater level or degree than seems reasonable or appropriate.

<sup>312</sup>**hacking** [n] [uncountable] the activity of using computers to get access to data in somebody else's computer or phone system without permission.

<sup>313</sup>**verbiage** [n] [uncountable] (*formal, disapproving*) the use of too many words, or of more difficult words than are needed, to express an idea.

<sup>314</sup>**shoddily** [adv] **1.** **shoddily built, constructed, made, designed, etc.** built, made or designed badly & with not enough care; **2.** in a dishonest or unfair way.

<sup>315</sup>**switch** [v] **1.** [intransitive, transitive] to change from 1 thing to another; to make something do this; **2.** [transitive] to exchange 1 thing for another; **switch off/on** | **switch something off/on** [phrasal verb] to turn a light, machine, etc. off/on by pressing a button or switch; [n] **1.** a small device that you press or move up & down in order to turn a piece of electrical equipment on & off; **2.** **switch (in/of something) (from A to B)** a change from 1 thing to another, especially when this is sudden & complete.

<sup>316</sup>**logical** [a] **1.** following or able to follow the rules of logic in which ideas or facts are based on other true ideas or facts; **2.** (of an action or event) seeming natural, reasonable or sensible, OPPOSITE: **illogical**; **3.** (*computing*) connected to the system or set of principles used in preparing a computer to perform a particular task.

<sup>317</sup>**sequel** [n] **1.** **sequel (to something)** a book, film, play, etc. that continues the story of an earlier one; **2.** [usually singular] **sequel (to something)** something that happens after an earlier event or as a result of an earlier event.

<sup>318</sup>**bother** [v] **1.** [intransitive, transitive] (often used in negative sentences & questions) to spend time &/or energy doing something; **2.** [transitive] to annoy, worry or upset somebody; to cause somebody trouble or pain; **3.** [transitive] to interrupt somebody; to talk to somebody when they do not want to talk to you; **be bothered (about somebody/something)** [idiom] (*especially British English, informal*) to think that somebody/something is important; [n] **1.** [uncountable] trouble or difficulty; **2.** **a bother** [singular] an annoying situation, thing or person, SYNONYM: **nuisance**; [exclamation] (*British English, informal*) used to express the fact that you are annoyed about something/somebody.

<sup>319</sup>**missing** [a] **1.** not available, e.g. because it has been removed, lost or destroyed; not included; **2.** used when it is not known where somebody is, or whether somebody is alive.

<sup>320</sup>**incorrectly** [adv] **1.** in a way that is not accurate or true, OPPOSITE: **correctly**; **2.** in the wrong way; not as it should be, OPPOSITE: **correctly**.

<sup>321</sup>**obstacle** [n] **1.** a situation, event or fact that makes it difficult for you to do or achieve something; **2.** an object that is in your way & that makes it difficult for you to move forward.

<sup>322</sup>**tenacious** [a] (*formal*) **1.** that does not stop holding something or give up something easily; determined; **2.** continuing to exist, have influence, etc. for longer than you might expect, SYNONYM: **persistent**.

<sup>323</sup>**obviously** [adv] **1.** used when giving information that you expect other people to know already or agree with, SYNONYM: **clearly**; **2.** in a way that is easy to see or understand, SYNONYM: **clearly**.

<sup>324</sup>**mystifying** [a] making somebody confused because they do not understand something, SYNONYM: **baffling**.

<sup>325</sup>**piece** [v] **piece together** [phrasal verb] **piece something** ↔ **together** **1.** to understand a story, situation, etc. by taking all the facts & details about it & putting them together; **2.** to put all the separate parts of something together to make a complete whole, SYNONYM: **assemble**.

<sup>326</sup>**ancient** [a] **1.** belonging to a period of history that is thousands of years in the past, OPPOSITE: **modern**; **2.** very old; having existed for a very long time; **3.** (**the ancients**) [n] [plural] the people who lived in ancient times, especially the Egyptians, Greeks & Romans.

<sup>327</sup>**rune** [n] **1.** 1 of the letters in an alphabet that people in northern Europe used in ancient times & cut into wood or stone; **2.** a symbol that has a mysterious or magic meaning.

<sup>328</sup>**constantly** [adv] all the time.

<sup>329</sup>**surprisingly** [adv] in a way that causes surprise.

<sup>330</sup>**fuzz** [n] **1.** [uncountable] short soft fine hair or fur that covers something, especially a person's face or arms, SYNONYM: **down**; **2.** [singular] a mass of curly hair; **3.** **the fuzz** [singular + singular or plural verb] (*old-fashioned, slang*) the police; **4.** something that you cannot see clearly, SYNONYM: **blur**.

<sup>331</sup>**machinery** [n] **1.** [uncountable] machines as a group, especially large ones; **2.** [uncountable, singular] the parts of a living thing that are involved in a particular process; **3.** [uncountable, singular] the organization or structure of something; the system for doing something.

<sup>332</sup>**clear-headed** [a] able to think in a clear & sensible way, especially in a difficult situation.

<sup>333</sup>**stuff** [n] [uncountable] **1.** something that something else is based on or is made from; the most important feature of something; **2.** (*informal*) used to refer to a substance, a material, a group of objects, some information, etc. when you do not know the name, when the name is not important or when it is obvious what you are talking about.



I don't mean that some people are born clearheaded & are therefore natural<sup>334</sup> writers, whereas others are naturally<sup>335</sup> fuzzy<sup>336</sup> & will never write well. Thinking clearly is a conscious<sup>337</sup> act that writers must force on themselves, as if they were working on any other project that requires logic: making a shopping list or doing an algebra problem. Good writing doesn't come naturally, though most people seem to think it does. Professional writers are constantly bearded<sup>338</sup> by people who say they'd like to "try a little writing sometime" – meaning when they retire<sup>339</sup> from their real profession<sup>340</sup>, like insurance<sup>341</sup> or real estate<sup>342</sup>, which is hard. Or they say, "I could write a book about that." I doubt<sup>343</sup> it.

Writing is hard work. A clear sentence is no accident. Very few sentences come out right the 1st time, or even the 3rd time. Remember this in moments of despair. If you find that writing is hard, it's because it *is* hard." – Zinsser, 2016, pp. 15–

## 2.3 Clutter

## 2.4 Style

## 2.5 The Audience

## 2.6 Words

## 2.7 Usage

# PART II: Methods

## 2.8 Unity

## 2.9 The Lead & the Ending

## 2.10 Bits & Pieces

# PART III: Forms

<sup>334</sup>**natural** [a] **1.** [only before noun] existing in nature; not made or caused by humans; **2.** normal; as you would expect. If somebody dies of **natural causes**, they die of old age or disease rather than violence.; **3.** (of behavioral or an ability) part of the character that a person or an animal was born with; **4.** [only before noun] having an ability that you were born with; **5.** [only before noun] based on a sense of what is right & wrong; **6.** [only before noun] (of parents or their children) related by blood.

<sup>335</sup>**naturally** [adv] **1.** existing or happening as a normal part of nature, without special help, treatment or action by somebody; **2.** in a way that you would expect, SYNONYM: **of course**; **3.** as a normal, logical result of something; **4.** in a way that shows or uses abilities or qualities that a person or an animal is born with; **come naturally (to somebody/something)** [idiom] if something comes naturally to you, you are able to do it very easily & very well.

<sup>336</sup>**fuzzy** [a] (**fuzzier**, **fuzziest**) **1.** covered with short soft fine hair or fur, SYNONYM: **downy**; **2.** (of hair) in a mass of tight curls; **3.** not clear in shape or sound, SYNONYM: **blurred**; **4.** confused & not expressed clearly.

<sup>337</sup>**conscious** [a] **1.** [not before noun] aware of something; noticing something, OPPOSITE: **unconscious**; **2.** able to use your senses & mental powers to understand what is happening, OPPOSITE: **unconscious**; **3.** (of actions, feelings, etc.) deliberate or controlled, OPPOSITE: **unconscious**; **4.** being particularly interested in something.

<sup>338</sup>**bearded** [a] having a beard.

<sup>339</sup>**retire** [v] [intransitive] to stop doing your job, especially because you have reached a particular age.

<sup>340</sup>**profession** [n] **1.** [countable] a type of job that needs special training or skill, especially one that needs a high level of education; **2. (the profession)** [singular + singular or plural verb] all the people who work in a particular profession; **3. (the professions)** [plural] the traditional jobs that need a high level of education & training, such as being a doctor or lawyer; **4.** [countable] **profession of something** a statement about what you believe, feel or think about something, that is sometimes made publicly, SYNONYM: **declaration**.

<sup>341</sup>**insurance** [n] **1.** [uncountable, countable] an agreement with a company in which you pay them regular amounts of money & they agree to pay the costs, e.g., if you die or are ill, or if you lose or damage something; **2.** [uncountable] the business of providing people with insurance; **3.** [uncountable] money paid by or to an insurance company; **4.** [uncountable, countable] **insurance (against something)** something you do to protect yourself against something bad happening in the future.

<sup>342</sup>**real estate** [n] [uncountable] (*especially North American English*) **1.** property in the form of land or buildings; **2.** the business of selling houses or land for building.

<sup>343</sup>**doubt** [n] [uncountable, countable] a feeling of not being sure about something or not believing something; [v] **1.** to not feel sure about something; to feel that something is not true or will probably not happen; **2. doubt somebody/something** to not trust somebody/something; to not believe somebody.

- 2.11 Nonfiction as Literature
- 2.12 Writing About People: The Interview
- 2.13 writing About Places: The Travel Article
- 2.14 Writing About Yourself: The Memoir
- 2.15 Science & Technology
- 2.16 Business Writing: Writing in Your Job
- 2.17 Sports
- 2.18 Writing About the Arts: Critics & Columnists
- 2.19 Humor

## PART IV: Attitudes

- 2.20 The Sound of Your Voice
- 2.21 Enjoyment, Fear & Confidence
- 2.22 The Tyranny of the Final Product
- 2.23 A Writer's Decisions
- 2.24 Writing Family History & Memoir
- 2.25 Write as Well as You Can



## Part II

# Scientific/Mathematical Writings

## Chapter 3

# Luc Tartar's Writing Styles

## Chapter 4

# Terence Tao/On Writing

“There are three rules for writing the novel. Unfortunately, no one knows what they are.” – W. Somerset Maugham

“Everyone has to **develop their own writing style**, based on their own strengths & weaknesses, on the subject matter, on the target audience, & sometimes on the target medium. As such, it is virtually impossible to prescribe rigid rules for writing that encompass all conceivable situations & styles.

Nevertheless, I do have some general advice on these topics:

- Writing a paper
  - “Use the introduction to **“sell” the key points of your paper**; the results should **be described accurately**. One should also invest some effort in both **organizing & motivating** the paper, & in particular in **selecting good notation & giving appropriate amounts of detail**. But **one should not over-optimize** the paper.
  - It also assists readability if you factor the paper into smaller pieces, e.g., by **making plenty of lemmas**.
  - To reduce the time needed to write & organize a paper, I recommend **writing a rapid prototype 1st**.
  - For 1st time authors especially, it is important to try to **write professionally**, & in **one’s own voice**. One should **take advantage of the English language**, & not just rely purely on mathematical symbols.
  - The **ratio between results & effort in one’s paper should be at a local maximum**.
- Submitting a paper
  - **Proofread & double-check your article before submission**; you should be **submitting a final draft, not a 1st draft**
  - **Subset to an appropriate journal**

I should point out, of course, that my own writing style is not perfect, & I myself don’t always adhere to the above rules, often to my own detriment. If some of these suggestions seem too unsuitable for your particular paper, use common sense.

Dual to the art of *writing* a paper well, is the art of *reading* a paper well.<sup>12</sup> Here is some commentary of mine on this topic:

- **On “compilation errors” in mathematical reading, & how to resolve them.**
- **On the use of implicit mathematical notational conventions to provide contextual clues when reading.**
- **On key “jumps in difficulty” in a mathematical argument, & how finding & understanding them is often key to understanding the argument as a whole.**
- **On “local” & “global” errors in mathematical papers, & how to detect them.**

Some further advice on mathematical exposition: [...]

---

<sup>1</sup>NQBH: In mathematical notation:

(Art of writing a paper well) = (Art of reading a paper well)\*, (Art of reading a paper well) = (Art of writing a paper well)\*.

<sup>2</sup>NQBH: In linguistic, *reading & writing skills* usually come together, so do *listening & speaking skills*. I.e., if one wants to master 1 of these 4 skills, then that person has to master its companion parallelly:

(reading  $\wedge$  writing)  $\vee$  (speaking  $\wedge$  listening).

## 4.1 Terence Tao/On Writing/Describe the Results Accurately

“10,000 fools proclaim themselves into obscurity, while 1 wise man forgets himself into immortality.” – Martin Luther King Jr.

“A paper should neither understate nor overstate its main results.”

If the main result is very surprising or a substantial breakthrough compared with the previous literature, these facts should be noted (and justified in detail, e.g., by explicit comparison with prior results, examples, & conjectures).

Conversely, if there are unsatisfactory aspects to the result (e.g., hypotheses too strong, or conclusions a little weaker than expected) these should also be stated honestly & openly, e.g., “We do not know if hypothesis H is actually necessary”. Similarly, it is worth noting down any interesting open questions remaining after your result.

If you are using a famous unsolved conjecture to motivate your own work, one should give a candid evaluation of the extent to which your work truly represents progress towards that conjecture, so as to avoid the impression of “false advertising” or “name-dropping”.

If for some reason you need to assert a non-trivial statement without proof or citation, it should be made clear that you are doing so (e.g., “It can be shown that ...” or “Although we will not need or prove this fact here ...”), so that the reader does not then hunt through the rest of your paper for the non-existent justification of that statement.

Titles of sections should be descriptive (e.g., “proof of the decomposition lemma” or “An orthogonality argument”), as opposed to uninformative (e.g., “Step 2” or “Some technicalities”).

## 4.2 Terence Tao/On Writing/Give Appropriate Amounts of Detail

“In presenting a mathematical argument the great thing is to give the educated reader the chance to catch on at once to the momentary point & take details for granted: his successive mouthfuls should be such as can be swallowed at sight; in case of accidents, or in case he wishes for once to check in detail, he should have only a clearly circumscribed little problem to solve (e.g., to check an identity: 2 trivialities omitted can add up to an impasse). The unpracticed writer, even after the dawn of a conscience, gives him no such chance; before he can spot the point he has to tease his way through a maze of symbols of which not the tiniest suffix can be skipped.”  
– John Littlewood, “*A Mathematician’s Miscellany*”

A paper should dwell at length (using **plenty of English**) on the most important, innovative, & crucial components of the paper, & be brief on the routine, expected, & standard components of the paper.

In particular, a paper should identify which of its components are the most interesting. Note that this means interesting to *experts in the field*, & not just interesting to *yourself*; e.g., if you have just learnt how to prove a standard lemma which is well known to the experts & already in the literature, this does not mean that you should provide the standard proof of this standard lemma, unless this serves some greater purpose in the paper (e.g., by motivating a less standard lemma).

Conversely, some computations, definitions, or notational conventions which you are very familiar with, but are not widely known in the field, should be expounded on in detail, even if these details are “obvious” to you due to your extensive work in this area. Even a brief sentence of explanation is much better than none at all.

For a similar reason, if you are using a relatively obscure lemma from, say, 1 of your own papers, you should not assume that every reader of your current article is intimately familiar with your previous paper. In such cases it is worth stating the lemma in full, with a precise citation (as opposed to casually using phrases e.g., “by a lemma in [my previous 100-page paper], we have ...”). When the lemma is particularly crucial, it is sometimes also worth spending a paragraph to sketch out a proof, or to otherwise remark on the significance of this lemma & its connections to other, more well known results.”

## 4.3 Terence Tao/On Writing/Take Advantage of the English Language

“Use soft words & hard arguments.” – Proverbial

“**Mathematical notation** is a wonderfully useful tool, & it can be exciting to learn for the first time the meaning of mysterious & arcane symbols e.g.,  $\forall, \exists, \emptyset, \Rightarrow$ , etc. However, just because you *can* write statements in purely mathematical notation doesn’t mean that you necessarily *should*. In many cases, it is in fact far more informative & readable to use liberal amounts of plain English; if used correctly & thoughtfully, the English language can communicate to the reader on many more levels than a mathematical expression, without sacrificing any precision or rigor. In particular, by subtly modulating the emphasis of one’s text, one can convey valuable contextual cues as to how a statement interacts with the rest of one’s argument.

An example should serve to illustrate this point. Suppose for instance that  $P$  &  $Q$  are properties that can apply to mathematical objects  $x$  &  $y$ . The mathematical statements  $P(x) \wedge Q(y)$  which asserts that  $x$  satisfies  $P$  &  $y$  satisfies  $Q$ , is

a well-formed & precise mathematical statement. But there are many possible ways one could express that mathematical statement in English, e.g.: ...” [Skip 27 items]

“From the viewpoint of formal mathematical logic, each of these English statement is logically equivalent to the mathematical sentence  $P(x) \wedge Q(y)$ . However, each of the above English statements also provides additional useful & informative cues for the reader regarding the relative importance, non-triviality, & causal relationship of the component statements  $P(x)$  &  $Q(y)$ , or of the component symbols  $P, x, Q$ , &  $y$ . E.g., in some of these sentences  $P(x)$  &  $Q(y)$  are given equal importance (being complementary or somehow in opposition to each other), whereas in others  $P(x)$  is only an auxiliary statement whose only purpose is to derive  $Q(y)$  (or vice versa), & in yet others,  $P(x)$  &  $Q(y)$  are deemed to be analogous, even if one is not formally deducible from the other. In some sentences, it is the objects  $x$  &  $y$  which are indicated to be the primary actors; in other sentences, it is the properties  $P$  &  $Q$ ; & in yet other sentences, it is the combined statements  $P(x)$  &  $Q(y)$  which are the most central.

Thus we see that English sentences can be considerably more expressive than their formal mathematical counterparts, while still retaining the precision & rigor that mathematical exposition demands. By using such humble English words as “also”, “but”, “since”, etc., a sentence conveys not only its semantic content, but also how it is going to fit in with the rest of one’s argument (or in the wider theory of the object), giving the reader more insight as to the overall structure of that argument. The paper may become slightly longer because of this, but this is a small price to pay for readability (which is *not* the same as brevity!).

On the other hand, one should **not try to excessively “improve”** the paper by using overly fancy or obscure words (from English or any other language), especially since such words can be mistaken for some sort of technical mathematical terminology. In many cases, one can replace complicated words by plainer equivalents, thus increasing the readability of one’s text without compromising the message. The primary purpose of mathematical writing is to *communicate & inform*, not to *impress*.

Finally, there is 1 situation in which it does make sense to use the terse language of mathematical notation rather than a more leisurely English equivalent, & that is when you are performing a tedious & standard formal computation. In those cases, the reader should already know in general terms what is going to happen (especially if you flag the computation as being standard beforehand), & will only be distracted by superfluous explanation or digression. (See also **“give appropriate amounts of detail”**.)

Naturellement, la discussion ci-dessus s’applique également à d’autres langues, telles que la langue française.”<sup>3</sup>

## 4.4 Terence Tao/On Writing/Use Good Notation

“By relieving the brain of all unnecessary work, a good notation sets it free to concentrate on more advanced problems, and, in effect, increases the mental power of the race.” – Alfred North Whitehead, “An Introduction to Mathematics”

“Good notation can make the difference between a readable paper & an unreadable one.”

Ideally, notation should emphasize the most important parameters & features of a mathematical expression or statement, while downplaying the routine or uninteresting parameters & features. For instance, if one does not care much about the exact values of constants in estimates, then notation which conceals these constants (e.g.,  $\ll$ ,  $\lesssim$ , or  $O(\cdot)$ ) are useful; conversely, these notations should be avoided if the precise values of these constants are of importance to the paper.

Notation which is used globally should be defined in a notation section near the front of the paper, or in the introduction; notation which is only used locally (e.g., within a single section, or within a proof of a single lemma) should be defined close to where it is used (possibly with a reminder that this notation is not used elsewhere in the paper); this is helpful when there are many sections, each with their own extensive notation.

Note that notation or statements which are introduced within a proof of a lemma are already understood to be localized to that lemma; it is bad form to then recall that notation or statement outside of that lemma, except perhaps as a remark or as motivation. In some cases it is worthwhile to define the notation once near the start of the paper, & then recall it whenever necessary.

One should strive to make one’s choices of notation compatible & consistent with notation already in the literature, so that the readers who are already familiar with prior notation will adapt easily to your paper & will not be confused.

Try to avoid notation which is overly “cute” or “clever”. This can be distracting or appear **unprofessional**. In particular, the notation should not be cleverer than the actual substance of the paper.

One should **definitely** avoid naming new terms after yourself (or after your family members, your pets, etc.), for the obvious reasons. If other authors name the concepts you introduce after yourself, & that appellation becomes common usage, then you may use that term as well, but in all other cases it gives the rather blatant impression of vanity or narcissism.

<sup>3</sup>Of course, the above discussion also applies to other languages, such as the French language.



There is an issue of where to strike the balance between too little notation & too much notation. A good rule of thumb is that any expression or concept which is used 3 or more times will probably benefit from introducing some notation to capture that expression or concept; conversely, an expression which is only used once probably does not need its own special notation. (An exception would be for particularly crucial theorems or propositions in the paper; here it might be worthwhile to invest in some notation in order to make the statement of those theorems clean & readable. Conversely, if an expression only appears in multiple locations of the paper because of coincidences of no significance, then it may be better to avoid introducing notation that gives the false impression of a connection between these appearances.)

If one needs to name a certain property or class of objects, one should generally use very bland names (e.g., “good”, “bad”, “Type I”, “Type II”, etc.) for peripheral or technical terms; colorful terms should be used sparingly, & only for those concepts that are quite central to the paper, lest they distract from the main points of that paper. (This is analogous to how, in film & literature, the main characters generally tend to have more memorable names than the secondary ones.)

Sometimes one is unsure what notation to use for a particular concept, because of potential conflicts with other notation in other (as yet unwritten) parts of a paper. One solution here is to introduce a  $\text{\TeX}$  macro for that notation, & force yourself to use that macro exclusively whenever that notation is used. (E.g., if you have a group which you are tentatively naming  $G$ , you could define a macro `\grp` that is set to  $G$ , & use `\grp` instead of  $G$  throughout the paper.) That way, if you find a notational conflict later on (e.g., if you discover that you really need  $G$  to denote a graph instead), then you only need to change 1 line in your  $\text{\TeX}$  file – the line that defines the macro – to resolve the notational conflict, rather than to do a tedious (and error-prone) search-and-replace.

For any rigorous component of the paper, the notation should be precise & unambiguous (and for non-rigorous components, ambiguous notation should be pointed out with “scare quotes” or other cautionary phrases such as “roughly speaking” or “essentially”). A certain amount of abuse of notation is permitted, though, as long as this is properly pointed out.” [Skip the common example of *division*, i.e.,  $a/bc$  means either  $(a/b)c$  or  $a/(bc)$ ; or use  $\frac{a}{b}c$  &  $\frac{a}{bc}$  instead].

“It is also worthwhile to quietly reinforce one’s notational conventions when given the opportunity. E.g., suppose in one’s argument one has a vector space, which one has decided to call  $V$ . When referring back to this object, one could say “the vector space”, or “ $V$ ”, but if the reader does not remember what vector space is being discussed, or what  $V$  is, the reader will have to take a minute or so to flip back & figure this out. But if instead you refer to this object consistently as “the vector space  $V$ ”, then the notational convention is reinforced, & the reader can continue reading without breaking rhythm. (One can also modulate the choice of terminology used here to emphasize different aspects of the object being referred to. If e.g., it is the additive structure of  $V$  which is currently relevant, you can instead say “the additive group  $V$ ”; if, later, it is the topological structure which is the most important, one can say “the topological vector space  $V$ ”, & so forth. This allows one to subtly draw attention to the most important features of the object under consideration, without distracting the reader from the main body of the argument.)”

See also Terence Tao’s answer to MathOverflow question: What are the benefits of writing vector inner products as  $\langle \mathbf{u}, \mathbf{v} \rangle$  as opposed to  $\mathbf{u}^\top \mathbf{v}$ ?

## 4.5 Terence Tao/On Writing/Write in Your Own Voice

“While one should always study the method of a great artist, one should never imitate his manner. The manner of an artist is essentially individual, the method of an artist is absolutely universal. The first is personality, which no one should copy; the second is perfection, which all should aim at.” – Oscar Wilde, *A Critic in Pall Mall*, p. 195

“When, as a graduate student, one is starting out one’s research in a mathematical subject, one usually begins by reading the papers of the current & past leaders of the field. Initially, one’s understanding of the subject is fairly limited, & so it is natural to view these papers as being authoritative, especially if their authors are well-known.

Eventually, though, one requires a fair fraction of the insights & understanding conveyed by the existing literature, & is able to apply it to produce a new result or observation that goes beyond that literature (or, at least, makes explicit what was only implicitly buried in previous papers). When the ramifications & extensions of these new advances have been explored to their natural extent, it then becomes time to write up these results as a research paper.

Of course, as your work is almost certainly based in part on the previous literature, one should cite that literature whenever appropriate, & compare & contrast your own work with that literature in an accurate, professional, & informative manner. Also, one should try to maintain some level of notational consistency with the previous literature, such as using the same fundamental definitions & to use similar notation, so that expert readers who are already familiar with that literature can quickly get up to speed on your work. And if 1 of the arguments in your work is standard in the literature, it certainly makes sense to structure the argument in a standard fashion if possible, again to assist the experts reading your paper.

However, one should **not** go so far as to copy entire paragraphs or more of text from a prior paper, except when used as a direct quotation to illustrate some historical point. First of all, if one does not properly attribute that text (e.g., “As Bourbaki [17, p. 146] writes,” or, for that matter, the Oscar Wilde quote above), then one runs the risk of committing plagiarism. But even if the text is properly attributed, copying the text verbatim, without updating it to reflect more recent

developments (including that in the paper being written) & to add your own simplifications & insights, is a redundant waste of space & a lost opportunity to advance the subject. If one is tempted to copy a significant portion of text from a prior reference without adding anything significantly new, one should instead simply cite the previous reference appropriately, e.g., “See [27, Section 4] for further discussion.” or “A proof can be found in [9, Lemma 2.4].” (cf. “**Give appropriate amounts of details**”).

Of course, there *are* reasons to duplicate to some extent some discussion or argument that was present in a previous paper:

- As mentioned earlier, one may wish to make some historical point, e.g., to track the development of a mathematical idea over time.
- If the paper is obscure & not widely available, reproducing a key argument from that paper may serve as a convenience to the reader.
- Also, if the *form* of that argument can be used to **motivate** other arguments in your paper, then it can be worth putting in that argument so that it can be referred to later in the paper.
- The precise result needed for your paper may differ slightly from what is already established in the literature, & so one needs to either write out a modified version of the proof, or else point to the original proof but indicate what modifications need to be made. (The latter is suitable if the changes are particularly minor in nature.)
- The existing paper may have an argument which can be updated, simplified, modernized, or otherwise improved thanks to more recent advances or insights in the area (including your own). It can then be a service to the field to place an updated version of the argument in the literature (with full citations to the paper containing the original argument, of course).

However, when one is not simply quoting the prior text for historical or archival purposes, it is best to *paraphrase & interpret* the previous text rather than to copy that text verbatim. This is for a number of reasons:

- One wants to avoid conveying any impression to readers, referees, or editors of plagiarism, padding, or intellectual laziness in one’s papers. (Note that the latter is a danger even if one is copying from one’s own work, rather than that of others.)
- The prior work may be dated in view of more recent developments & insights, as mentioned above.
- If you are copying or adapted a piece of text from another author that you do not fully understand yourself, then it may end up being inappropriate or incongruous for your intended purpose, & may convey the impression of superficiality or being ill-informed. If the text becomes inaccurate due to this adaptation, then this can also cause some embarrassment & annoyance for the original author of that text.
- Excessive use of quotation from famous mathematicians to make one’s own work look more impressive is the mathematical equivalent of name-dropping, & should be avoided. Appeal to authority should not be the primary basis for motivating a paper; a handful of citations to demonstrate the depth of interest in the problem being studied is usually sufficient.
- *But most importantly of all, for one’s further mathematical development & career, one needs to develop one’s own consistent mathematical “voice” & style, & to avoid the impression of simply imitating the voices of other authors.* There is no need in this subject for the mathematical equivalent of a parrot, & a text which is a mix of the author’s voice & the voice of others can read very strangely.

Of course, if one is paraphrasing a previous work, one should cite that work appropriately (e.g., “The proof here is loosely based on that in [5].” or “This discussion is inspired by a related discussion in [10].”).

In some cases, the imitation of a previous author’s style & text is intended as a sign of respect or flattery for that author. **This is misguided**; an author will in fact often find such mimicry to actually be somewhat offensive. If one wants to truly respect a mathematician, then understand that mathematician’s methods, results, & exposition, & improve, update, adapt, & advance all 3. Even the greatest mathematician’s contributions should advance with the field, rather than being worshiped & preserved in some supposed state of perfection; the latter is mostly suitable only for historical purposes.

Another possible reason for copying the style of a more senior mathematician is that one does not yet have the self-confidence to write in one’s own style & voice. While this is justifiable to some extent when one is just starting one’s career, it becomes less excusable as one continues one’s research. If one is hesitant to state things in one’s own fashion, it is perfectly acceptable to couch such text with the appropriate caveats (e.g., “to the author’s knowledge, this observation is new” or “While Lemma 2.5 is usually phrased in a topological fashion, we found the following, more geometric, formulation to be more convenient for our applications”). And if one does not feel confident enough in one’s understanding of a subject to

explain it in any other way than copying from a previous paper, then this should be taken as a sign that one still needs to **internalize the subject further**.

When writing a paper with 1 or more coauthors, there will inevitably be distinctions in style,<sup>4</sup> & so initially different sections may have sharply different tones due to their being largely written by different subsets of coauthors; but I usually find that after a few rounds of editing, the voices are harmonized into a style which is clearly derived from, but distinct from, each of the individual styles. Ideally, one should understand & respect the underlying stylistic decisions of one's coauthors, but at the same time be willing to take the initiative & find ways to formulate the text & arrangement to smoothly reconcile the coauthor's preferences with one's own; if all goes well, this can lead to a level of exposition & presentation that is superior to what each of the individual authors could separately achieve. (Of course, if you are to perform major edits on a coauthor's contribution, some consultation with that coauthor is presumably desirable). This process can be quite educational; my own writing style has definitely been influenced in a positive fashion by those of my coauthors.

Developing one's own style is, by definition, a very personal process; while external advice or role models can certainly be of some influence, they are of limited utility after a certain point. But finding an individual style which is comfortable & effective for both you & your readers is an important mark of one's *mathematical maturity*, & is a goal that is definitely worth pursuing."

---

<sup>4</sup>NQBH: a reasonable justification for loneliness and/in solo (academic) writing.

**Part III**

**Miscellaneous**

## Chapter 5

# How to Write Foreword & Preface

**Question 5.1.** *How to write foreword & preface properly?*

### Quick notes

“when possible and/or necessary” – Chacón Rebollo and Lewandowski, 2014, p. 47



# Bibliography

[TerryTao] [Terence Tao's blog](#).

- Terence Tao. *On writing* (or in full: *Advice on writing papers*).
  - Terence Tao. *On writing/Describe the results accurately*.
  - Terence Tao. *On writing/Give appropriate amounts of detail*.
  - Terence Tao. *On writing/Use good notation*.
  - Terence Tao. *On writing/Write in your own voice*.

# Bibliography

Chacón Rebollo, Tomás and Roger Lewandowski (2014). *Mathematical and numerical foundations of turbulence models and applications*. Modeling and Simulation in Science, Engineering and Technology. Birkhäuser/Springer, New York, pp. xviii+517. ISBN: 978-1-4939-0454-9; 978-1-4939-0455-6. DOI: [10.1007/978-1-4939-0455-6](https://doi.org/10.1007/978-1-4939-0455-6). URL: <https://doi.org/10.1007/978-1-4939-0455-6>.

Strunk, William (1918). *The Elements of Style*, p. 43.

Strunk Jr., William and E. B. White (2019). *The Elements of Style*. Fourth edition, p. 110.

Zinsser, William (2016). *On Writing Well: The Classic Guide to Writing Nonfiction*. 30th Anniversary Edition, p. 336.